

Т. Н. Федуленкова

# КЛЮЧИ К УЧЕБНИКУ «Практический курс АНГЛИЙСКОГО ЯЗЫКА»

под редакцией В. Д. Аракина

1 курс

Высшее образование

Т. Н. Федуленкова

---

**КЛЮЧИ**

---

**К УЧЕБНИКУ**

---

**«Практический курс**

---

**АНГЛИЙСКОГО ЯЗЫКА»**

---

*под редакцией В. Д. Аракина*

---

Высшее образование

**1**  
курс

МОСКВА



АЙРИС ПРЕСС

АЙРИС *бидактиса*

---

2007

**УДК 811.111(075.8)**  
**ББК 81.2Англ-923**  
**Ф34**

**Рецензенты:**

*Пономарева О. Б.*, д. ф. н., профессор кафедры английского языка  
Тюменского госуниверситета;  
*Поцелуева Н. В.*, старший преподаватель  
Павлодарского госуниверситета

*Серийное оформление А. М. Драгового*

**Федуленкова, Т. Н.**  
**Ф34** Ключи к учебнику «Практический курс английского языка  
I курс» под редакцией В. Д. Аракина / Т. Н. Федуленкова. — М.:  
Айрис-пресс, 2007. — 256 с. — (Высшее образование).

**ISBN 978-5-8112-2920-8**

В пособии представлены ключи ко всем лексико-грамматическим упражнениям учебника «Практический курс английского языка. I курс» под редакцией В. Д. Аракина.

Использование этого пособия способствует более прочному усвоению грамматики и лексики и высвобождению значительной части учебного времени для творческой работы на английском языке.

Пособие адресовано студентам и преподавателям факультетов иностранных языков.

**ББК 81.2Англ-923**  
**УДК 811.111(075.8)**

**ISBN 978-5-8112-2920-8**

© ООО «Издательство  
«АЙРИС-пресс», 2007

## **Предисловие**

В комплекте учебников английского языка для педагогических вузов под редакцией проф. В. Д. Аракина предлагаются разнообразные по характеру упражнения — репродуктивные, полупродуктивные, продуктивные, — нацеленные как на начальное, или первичное, усвоение, так и на полное, или окончательное, закрепление изучаемого вокабуляра.

В данном пособии предлагаются ключи ко всем лексико-грамматическим упражнениям учебника «Практический курс английского языка. 1 курс», кроме фонетических, лабораторных и творческих.

Одними из наиболее эффективных упражнений полупродуктивного типа являются упражнения на письменный перевод с русского языка на английский. Такие упражнения, как и многие другие в учебнике, можно предлагать студентам в качестве заданий для самостоятельной внеаудиторной работы, используя данное пособие для самоконтроля.

Предлагается следующая последовательность выполнения упражнений на перевод в рамках самостоятельной внеаудиторной работы с использованием ключей:

1) внимательное прочтение предложения в упражнении учебника,

2) устный перевод прочитанного предложения с русского языка на английский,

3) запись перевода в рабочую тетрадь,

4) сверка написанного предложения с ключом и его корректировка,

5) произведение самозаписи выполненного и откорректированного упражнения на магнитную ленту или электронный носитель,

6) проверка усвоения лексики и моделей ее сочетаемости посредством перевода с «листа» (учебника) и сверкой с записью, либо в тетради, либо на магнитной ленте, либо на электронном носителе,

7) заключительный взаимоконтроль посредством работы в парах в режиме «учитель — ученик».

Предлагаемая организация самостоятельной, внеаудиторной работы студентов способствует более прочному усвоению ими активного вокабуляра и высвобождению значительной части аудиторного времени для творческой работы на изучаемом иностранном языке.

*Автор*

## **Коррективный курс**

### **Lesson Four**

#### **Ex. XII, p. 47**

1. Is she a doctor? — Yes, she is. She is a good doctor.
2. She is seventeen (years old / years of age), isn't she? — Yes, she is.
3. Your brother is fourteen, isn't he? — Yes, he is.
4. Is he fourteen or fifteen (years old)? — He is fourteen.
5. This ball is small, isn't it? — Yes, it is.
6. Is the pencil small or big? — It is big.
7. They are not busy, are they? — No, they are not.
8. He is busy, isn't he? — Yes, he is.
9. He is out, isn't he? — Yes, he is. He is out.
10. He is in, isn't he? — Yes, he is.
11. It is a leather bag, isn't it? — Yes, it is.
12. Is it a difficult or an easy text? — It's an easy text. / It's an easy one.
13. The text is not difficult, is it? — No, it isn't.
14. It's eleven (o'clock) now, isn't it? — Yes, it is.
15. Is it eleven or twelve (o'clock) now? — It's eleven (o'clock) (now).
16. It is not twelve yet, is it? — No, it isn't.
17. It is cold.
18. Is it cold?
19. It is cold, isn't it?
20. Is it cold or hot in the hall? — It's cold.
21. It isn't hot in the hall, is it? — No, it isn't.
22. Take the map (the lamp, the pen, the notebook / the exercise book, the paper).
23. Don't take my ball (my bag, my pencil, my skates, my things).
24. Don't go home alone.
25. It's dark. Go home.

## Lesson Five

### Ex. VIII, p. 60

1. No, he isn't. Doctor Sandford is out.
2. Doctor Sandford is still in the hospital.
3. No, she isn't. Mrs. Sandford is out.
4. Yes, she is. Mrs. Sandford is in the park with Benny.
5. No, she isn't. She isn't in the garden.
6. But yes, she is. Old Mrs. Sandford is not well.
7. No, she isn't. Old Mrs. Sandford is not in bed.
8. Yes, she is. She is better today.
9. Yes, he is. Mr. Sandford is at home after four on Saturday.
10. He is at home after four on Saturday.

### Ex. IX, p. 60

- a)
1. Are they in the garden or in the park?
  2. Is your sister at the Institute or at / in the library?
  3. Is Doctor Sandford at the hospital or at home?
  4. Is his wife in the park or in the yard?
  5. Is the exercise easy or difficult?
  6. Is Betty nineteen or twenty?
  7. Is the hall big or small?
  8. Are you free on Saturday or on Sunday?
  9. Are these lessons difficult or easy?
  10. Is this sentence long or short?
- b)
1. They are in the garden, aren't they?
  2. Your sister is at the Institute, isn't she?
  3. Doctor Sandford is at the hospital, isn't he?
  4. His wife is in the park, isn't she?
  5. The exercise is easy, isn't it?
  6. Betty is nineteen, isn't she?
  7. The hall is big, isn't it?
  8. You are free on Saturday, aren't you?
  9. These lessons are difficult, aren't they?
  10. This sentence is long, isn't it?

**Ex. X, p. 60**

1. These are boxes.
2. These are spoons.
3. Those are forks.
4. These are parks.
5. Those are gardens.
6. These are desks.
7. Those are doors.
8. These are my birds.
9. Those are his dogs.
10. Those are her daughters.

**Ex. XI, p. 61**

short [ʃɔ:t] — shorter ['ʃɔ:tə] — the shortest [ðə 'ʃɔ:tɪst]  
 tall [tɔ:l] — taller ['tɔ:lə] — the tallest [ðə 'tɔ:lɪst]  
 large [lɑ:dʒ] — larger ['lɑ:dʒə] — the largest [ðə 'lɑ:dʒɪst]  
 nice [naɪs] — nicer ['naɪsə] — the nicest [ðə 'naɪsɪst]  
 long [lɒŋ] — longer ['lɒŋə] — the longest [ðə 'lɒŋɪst]  
 big [bɪɡ] — bigger ['bɪɡə] — the biggest [ðə 'bɪɡɪst]  
 red [red] — redder ['redə] — the reddest [ðə 'redɪst]  
 high [haɪ] — higher ['haɪə] — the highest [ðə 'haɪɪst]  
 dirty ['dɜ:tɪ] — dirtier ['dɜ:tɪə] — the dirtiest [ðə 'dɜ:tɪst]  
 fast [fɑ:st] — faster ['fɑ:stə] — the fastest [ðə 'fɑ:stɪst]  
 easy ['i:zi] — easier ['i:ziə] — the easiest [ðə 'i:zɪst]  
 good [ɡʊd] — better ['betə] — the best [ðə 'best]  
 bad [bæd] — worse [wɜ:s] — the worst [ðə 'wɜ:st]  
 few [fju:] — fewer ['fju:ə] — the fewest [ðə 'fju:ɪst]  
 busy ['bɪzi] — busier ['bɪziə] — the busiest [ðə 'bɪzɪst]  
 near [nɪə] — nearer ['nɪərə] — the nearest [ðə 'nɪəɪst] / the  
     next [ðə 'nekst]  
 far [fɑ:] — farther ['fɑ:ðə] / further ['fɜ:ðə] — the farthest [ðə  
     'fɑ:ðɪst] / the furthest [ðə 'fɜ:ðɪst]  
 old [əʊld] — older ['əʊldə] / elder ['eldə] — the oldest [ðə 'əʊldɪst] /  
     the eldest [ðə 'eldɪst]  
 late [leɪt] — later ['leɪtə] / latter ['lætə] — the latest [ðə 'leɪtɪst] /  
     the last ['lɑ:st]



thin [θɪn] — thinner ['θɪnə] — the thinnest [ðə 'θɪnɪst]  
 thick [θɪk] — thicker ['θɪkə] — the thickest [ðə 'θɪkɪst]  
 comfortable ['kʌmfətəbl] — more comfortable [mɔ: 'kʌmfətəbl] —  
 the most comfortable [ðə 'mɔ:st 'kʌmfətəbl]  
 interesting ['ɪntrəstɪŋ] — more interesting [mɔ: 'ɪntrəstɪŋ] —  
 the most interesting [ðə 'mɔ:st 'ɪntrəstɪŋ]  
 difficult ['dɪfɪkəlt] — more difficult [mɔ: 'dɪfɪkəlt] — the most  
 difficult [ðə 'mɔ:st 'dɪfɪkəlt]  
 narrow ['nærʊ] — narrower ['nærʊə] — the narrowest [ðə  
 'nærʊɪst]

**Ex. XII, p. 61**

1. She is not so young as you are.
2. He is not so clever as his father is.
3. I am not so tired as you are.
4. My mother is not so old as yours.
5. This book is not so interesting as that one.
6. These dictations are not so bad as those ones.
7. My father is not so tall as yours.
8. His daughter is not so beautiful as his wife.
9. My room is not so light as yours.
10. This new house is not so big as the old one.
11. This boy is not so clever as that one.

**Ex. XIII, p. 61**

1. She is less tired than I am.
2. The child is less sleepy than you are.
3. This task is less important than that one.
4. This book is less interesting than that one.
5. Spanish is less difficult than Chinese.
6. There is less ink in my fountain pen than in yours.

**Ex. XIV, p. 61**

1. Is it? 2. Is it? 3. Is it? 4. Isn't it? 5. Is it? 6. Isn't it? 7. Isn't it? 8. Is it? 9. Isn't it? 10. Is it? 11. Is it? 12. Isn't it? 13. Isn't it? 14. Isn't it?

**Ex. XVI, p. 62**

1. Is Mr. Sandford at home after four on Saturday?
2. Is my brother still at the office?
3. Is Mr. Smith a good doctor?
4. Is my mother glad to see you?

**Ex. XVIII, p. 62**

1. What's the matter? / What's up? — John is ill.
2. Is he in bed? — Yes, he is. But he is / feels better today.
3. Is Tom in? — No, he is out. He is usually at home at five (o'clock).
4. On Saturday I am at home at four (o'clock).
5. Where is Benny? — He is in the park.
6. What is he? — He is a doctor.
7. Is Doctor Sandford in / at home? — He is still in the hospital.
8. Benny is in the park, isn't he?
9. When are they at home on Saturday? — At six (o'clock).
10. They are always glad to see you.
11. What a pity / That's a pity, he is out / he is not at home.
12. What a pity / That's a pity, she is still in bed.

**Lesson Six****Ex. VII, p. 76**

1. Her full name is Elizabeth Louise Smith.
2. She is a college graduate. She is a writer, just a beginner.
3. Yes, she has. She has got many companions.
4. Yes, they are. Her companions are kind and jolly.
5. Betty's elder sister, Helen, is married to Henry Sandford.
6. Yes, she is. Betty is a member of her sister's family.
7. Her brother-in-law is a doctor.
8. He has a mother, but he has no father.
9. No, she isn't. Helen is a housewife.
10. They have only one child, Benny.

11. Betty's nephew is four.
12. Yes, he is. But sometimes he is naughty.
13. He is fond of birds and animals.
14. No, he isn't. He is eager to have a rabbit.
15. Yes, they have. They have got many animals and birds in the house.

**Ex. IX, p. 76**

1. my mother's brother
2. my sister's friend
3. his daughter's husband
4. my parents' house
5. my father's table
6. my mother's work
7. this student's notebook
8. these students' notebooks
9. my friend's sister
10. our cousin's friend
11. my grandfather's photo
12. Pete's room
13. her brother's son
14. Ann's daughter
15. my mother's sister

**Ex. X a), p. 77**

1. What faculty are you students of?
2. What is her brother-in-law?
3. What is Betty Smith?
4. What is my sister-in-law?
5. Is his family large?
6. How many children have they got?
7. Has she got a son or a daughter?
8. What is their child's name?
9. What is her name?
10. How old is his nephew?
11. Where is he?
12. Is she a German student?
13. Whose sister is Betty?
14. What has she got on the table?
15. Has Benny any brothers?
16. What age is their grandmother of?
17. What age is Dr. Sandford of?

**Ex. XII, p. 77**

1. cousin
2. grandfather
3. nephew
4. niece
5. uncle
6. aunt
7. cousin
8. grandmother
9. sister-in-law
10. brother-in-law

**Ex. XIII, p. 77**

1. am 2. is 3. are 4. is, are 5. are 6. Is 7. Are 8. is 9. are, am  
10. are, are 11. Are 12. Are 13. are 14. Is 15. is 16. am 17. am  
18. is 19. is

**Ex. XIV, p. 78**

1. to 2. at, in, with 3. at 4. into 5. in 6. into 7. out of 8. in  
9. into 10. from 11. in / under 12. to 13. to 14. out of 15. in  
16. to 17. of 18. in 19. at 20. of, at 21. at, of

**Ex. XV, p. 78**

1. any, any 2. any, some 3. no, a 4. some / no 5. any, any  
6. some / no 7. any 8. any 9. some / no 10. any, some 11. any,  
none 12. any 13. no / some 14. no / some

**Ex. XVI, p. 78**

writer, worker, teacher, reader, painter, singer, examiner,  
dancer, listener

**Ex. XVII, p. 78**

three, nine, eleven, twelve, fourteen, fifteen, nineteen, thirty-  
three, forty-four, sixty, ninety-nine, a / one hundred

**Ex. XVIII, p. 79**

the first, the third, the fifth, the ninth, the nineteenth, the  
second, the fourth, the eighth, the twelfth, the twentieth

**Ex. XIX, p. 79**

Forty-six plus eighteen is sixty-four.  
Fifteen minus eight is seven.  
Eighty minus thirty is fifty.  
Nine plus eleven is twenty.  
Four plus forty is forty-four.  
Ten plus eight is eighteen.  
Seventy-nine minus fifty is twenty-nine.

Ninety-nine plus one is a / one hundred.  
Thirty divided by five is six.  
Five multiplied by five is twenty-five.  
Nine multiplied by nine is eighty-one.  
Ten divided by two is five.  
Ten divided by five is two.  
Six multiplied by eight is forty-eight.  
Six multiplied by six is thirty-six.  
Twenty-seven divided by three is nine.

**Ex. XX, p. 79**

1. Take your books out of the bags and put them on the desks.
2. Open you books at page 79 and find Exercise Twenty on it.
3. Go to the blackboard and write Sentence One.
4. Come up nearer to the bookcase, will you?
5. Put your exercise books aside, will you?
6. Read Text 1 on page 83, will you?
7. Will you look at the picture, please?
8. Will you close the window, please?
9. Will you, please, speak louder?
10. Please, prepare you homework in time, will you?

**Ex. XXI, p. 79**

1. His friends are students of the English Faculty. They are future teachers.
2. Helen is Mr. Sandford's wife.
3. How old is your niece?
4. How many brothers has James? — Only one.
5. He is married and has a large family.
6. Is your elder sister married? — Yes, she is. Her husband is a teacher of English.
7. Has he a nephew? — No, he hasn't. But he has a niece.
8. Take your books out of the / your bags.
9. Open your books at page Twenty-Seven.
10. You must read Lesson Six once more.
11. Read and translate Sentence Three.

12. Do Exercise Eleven on page Thirty-Seven.
13. Fetch some chalk from Room Fourteen.
14. She is a naughty / disobedient girl.
15. My schoolmate is very fond of animals / likes animals very much.
16. I am eager to have a dog in the house, but my parents are against it.
17. My daughter-in-law has no peace in the house because of cats and dogs.
18. Most of her daughter's girlfriends are students.
19. His children are well-bred.
20. Nelly is a kind and jolly girl.
21. We are schoolmates and classmates.
22. He lives at 9, Lesnaya Street, Flat Fifteen.
23. Have you got a telephone? — Yes, I have. My telephone number is two one seven one eight three six.
24. He is not so young as you think, he is already thirty.
25. My niece is as old as your grandson.
26. How old is your son? — He is ten years old / years of age. He is three years older than your daughter is.
27. My cousin is two years and a half younger than I am.
28. My brother's daughter is only a year and a half.
29. Natasha is the youngest of my friends.
30. My parents and I live at 10, Peschanaya Street.
31. Add ten to ten.
32. Multiply five by seven.
33. If you divide thirty by six, you will get five.

## Lesson Seven

### Ex. III, p. 88

countries ['kʌntrɪz], saleswomen ['seɪlzwɪmɪn], matches ['mætʃɪz], boys [bɔɪz], sisters-in-law ['sɪstəzɪn,lɔ:], men [men], teeth [ti:θ], handkerchiefs ['hæŋkətʃi:fs] / handkerchieves ['hæŋkətʃi:vz], potatoes [pə'tetɪʒuz], deer [diə], pianos ['pjænɔz], knives [naɪvz], suffixes ['sʌfiksɪz], feet [fi:t]

**Ex. VII, p. 89**

- A.**
1. Yes, it is. This is a classroom.
  2. No, there are not. There are not many desks in it. There are fifteen desks here.
  3. Yes, there are. There are (some) chairs in the room. There are thirty chairs in the room.
  4. Yes, there are. There are (some) suspended lamps in the room.
  5. No, they are not. The lamps are not on the walls.
  6. There are eight lamps in the room.
  7. There are three windows in the room.
  8. The walls are light-green (in colour).
  9. The desks are beige (in colour).
  10. The chairs are fawn (in colour).
  11. Yes, there is. There is a blackboard on the wall.
  12. The board is green (in colour).
  13. There are nine sentences on it.
  14. There are seven books on my desk.
  15. They are English.
  16. There are three exercise books in my bag.
  17. They are thick.
  18. This book is thin.
  19. There is a cassette recorder on this table.
  20. There are pencils in that box.
- B.**
1. Yes, it is. The box is on the desk.
  2. Yes, they are. The pencils are in the box.
  3. The bag is under the desk.
  4. The fountain pen is in the bag.
  5. The notebook is in your hand.
  6. The notebooks are on the desk.
  7. The letters are under the book.
  8. The picture is on the wall.
  9. The chair is near the table.
  10. The pens are in the box.
- C.**
1. No, it isn't. Dr. Sandford's family is not very large.
  2. Yes, he has. He has a wife.
  3. Her name is Helen.

4. Yes, she has. She has a sister.
5. No, he hasn't. Dr. Sandford has no father.
6. Yes, he has. He has a mother.
7. No, he hasn't. He has no daughter.
8. Yes, he has. He has a son.
9. His name is Benny.
10. There are five people in Dr. Sandford's family.
11. Dr. Sandford is thirty.
12. Helen is twenty-six.
13. Mrs. Sandford is fifty-eight.
14. Benny has two cousins.
15. George and May are Aunt Emily's children.
16. Benny's cousins are in Canada now.

**Ex. VIII, p. 90**

1. There is a bus in the street.
2. There is a lamp in the room.
3. There is chalk at the blackboard.
4. There is bread on the table.
5. There is tea in the teapot.
6. There is coffee in the coffeepot.
7. There is money in the bag.
8. There is paper in the box.
9. There is soap on the shelf.
10. There is water in the jug.

**Ex. IX, p. 90**

1. at 2. past 3. at, to / past 4. past 5. to, at, at 6. from, till
7. in, of

**Ex. X, p. 90**

1. There are sentences on the blackboard.
2. Are there (any) desks in the room?
3. There are not any books on the table.
4. Are there (any) dictionaries on the chair?
5. There are matches in the box.



6. There are girls in the picture.
7. There are no children in their family.

**Ex. XI a), p. 91**

1. Is there a telegram on the table? There is no telegram on the table.
2. Is there a cinema near our house? There is no cinema near our house.
3. Are there many mistakes in his dictation? There are not many mistakes in his dictation.
4. Is there much paper in his bag? There is not much paper in his bag.
5. Are there two sofas in the room? There are not two sofas in the room.
6. Are there many children in the park today? There are not many children in the park today.

**Ex. XII, p. 91**

1. No, that's wrong. Doctor Sandford has no daughter, he has only a son.
2. No, that's wrong. There are five people in Doctor Sandford's family.
3. No, that's wrong. Doctor Sandford is thirty.
4. No, that's wrong. There are no boys or girls in the family for Benny to play with.
5. No, that's wrong. Benny has two cousins.
6. No, that's wrong. Benny's cousins are in Canada.
7. No, that's wrong. Benny's cousins are not schoolchildren.

**Ex. XV a), p. 92**

1. What is there in the room? How many tables are there in the room?
2. What is there in her bag? How many notebooks are there in her bag?
3. What is there in the hall? How many students are there in the hall?

4. What is there on the desk? How many clocks are there on the desk?
5. What is there in the laboratory? How many cassette recorders are there in the laboratory?
6. What is there in the exercise? How many sentences are there in the exercise?

**Ex. XVI a), p. 92**

1. How much coffee is there in the coffeepot? — There is much coffee in the coffeepot.
2. How much water is there in the glass? — There is much water in the glass.
3. How much salt is there in the soup? — There is too much salt in the soup.
4. How much money is there in the bag? — There is little money in the bag.
5. How much tea is there in the teapot? — There is much tea in the teapot.
6. How much butter is there on the plate? — There is little butter on the plate.

**Ex. XVII, p. 92**

- A.**
1. There is a picture on the wall. There is a clock on the wall. There is a blackboard on the wall. There are potatoes on the table. There are books on the table. There is milk in the jug. There is butter on the plate. There is salt on the table. There is a sentence (written) on the blackboard.
  2. The picture is on wall. The clock is on the wall. The blackboard is on the wall. The boxes are on the table. The bags are on the table. The books are on the table. The milk is in the jug. The butter is on the plate. The salt is on the table. The sentence is (written) on the blackboard.
  3. There is a lamp on the table. The lamp is on the table. There are newspapers on the table. The newspapers are on the table. There is a car in the street. The car is in the street. There is a sofa near the wall. The sofa is near the wall. There are pencils in the box. The pencils are in the box.

4. There is no book on the chair. The book is not on the chair. There is no hat on the chair. The hat is not on the chair. There is no exercise book on the chair. The exercise book is not on the chair. There is no pen in the box. The pen is not in the box. There is no money in the bag. The money is not in the bag.
5. There are not three but four books in the bag. There are not five but six pencils in the bag. There are not two pens but one in the bag.
6. It's just the time for dinner. It's just the time for tea.
- B.** 1. This is my room. There is a table in the middle of the room. There is a jug on the table. There is milk in the jug. There is butter on the plate.
2. Let Benny sit down to table. It's just the time for breakfast. The milk is in the jug. The butter is on the plate. The knife is near the plate. Where is the bread? The bread is in the sideboard.
3. Where is the magazine? There is no magazine on the table. The magazine is not on the table but on the chair.
4. There is no pen in the box. The pen is not in the box but in the table.
5. Where is the money? There is no money in the bag. Your money is not in the bag. It is on the table.
6. Are there many exercise books in your bag? — No, there are not many, two or three. — Is there much chalk on the board? — Yes, there is, I think so.
7. Are there many houses in your street? — Yes, there are. There are many beautiful new houses in our street. — Are there many flowers in your park? — Not so many, but I like them very much.

**Ex. XVIII, p. 93**

**Model 1:** There is a lot of milk in the jug. There is a lot of sugar in the sugar bowl. There is a lot of rubbish in the corner. There is a lot of juice in the carafe.

**Model 2:** There are a lot of mistakes in the test paper. There are a lot of dictionaries on the shelves. There are a lot of buttons on the coat. There are a lot of people in the room.

**Ex. XIX, p. 93**

1. much 2. many 3. little 4. many 5. much 6. much 7. a few 8. a little / some 9. a few 10. a few 11. many 12. much 13. many 14. some

**Ex. XXI, p. 93**

1. At ten o'clock.
2. At seven o'clock.
3. At twelve o'clock.
4. At half past twelve.
5. At half past two.
6. At half past ten.
7. At a quarter past five.
8. At a quarter past seven.
9. At a quarter past nine.
10. It is a quarter to one.
11. It is a quarter to three.
12. It is a quarter to four.
13. At twenty (minutes) past eight.
14. It is ten (minutes) to twelve.
15. It is twenty-five (minutes) to five.
16. At ten (minutes) past six.
17. At five (minutes) to six.
18. It is three (minutes) to six.
19. It is seven (minutes) to nine.
20. It is twenty-eight (minutes) to three.

**Ex. XXII, p. 94**

- a) one hundred and thirty-four,  
two hundred and ninety-eight,  
three hundred and fifty-five,  
nine hundred and forty-eight,  
three thousand five hundred and twenty-six,  
nine thousand and eleven,  
one hundred and ninety-three,  
five hundred and sixty-one,  
seven million five hundred and six thousand and seventeen,

thirty-five million six hundred and sixteen thousand two hundred and thirty-four

- b) one hundred and four,  
 one hundred and fifty-one,  
 one hundred and seventy-five,  
 one hundred and eighty-nine,  
 one thousand and twelve,  
 one thousand and seventeen,  
 one thousand and thirty-eight,  
 two thousand five hundred and sixty-eight,  
 four thousand and eighty-three,  
 five thousand nine hundred and ninety-three,  
 six thousand four hundred and ten,  
 ten thousand seven hundred and eighty-four,  
 two hundred and fifty-seven thousand six hundred and twenty-nine,  
 eight hundred and forty-one thousand four hundred and three,  
 two million one hundred and eighty-four thousand and one,  
 one three four eight six seven eight,  
 two five three six four nine two,  
 two eight nine four seven three [30]

**Ex. XXIII, p. 94**

1. Are there many students in this room? — No, there are not many.
2. There is a table in the middle of the room. There are flowers on the table.
3. There are five rooms in our flat. They are large and light.
4. Where is your brother? — He is in that room.
5. There is no bread on the table.
6. Our University is not far from the centre.
7. There are many big houses in this street.
8. There is much light in this room.
9. Oleg is in Group 105.
10. Nelly is in Group 102.

11. Boris is in Group 501.
12. Read Text Nine.
13. Do Exercise Two on the blackboard.
14. There is no chalk at the blackboard.
15. There are many pens, pencils and exercise books on the table.
16. Are there any apples on the plate?
17. The apples are in the basket.
18. The cups are on the table.
19. Is your nephew at school? — No, he is not, he is at home.
20. There are not ten but nine students in our group.
21. Are there many boxes on this table? — No, there are not many.
22. There are not three but four windows in our room.
23. Come at six o'clock.
24. Come back at half past nine.
25. James is an eight-year-old boy, his sister is a six-year-old girl.
26. Tell me your telephone number, please. — Here you are. Write it down: 338-25-41 (double three eight two five four one).
27. Peter's son is seven years old. Arthur's sister is fifteen years old. Tom's grandmother is sixty-eight years old / years of age.

## Lesson Eight

### Ex. VII, p. 105

- A.
1. Yes, I can. I can speak English well.
  2. No, I can't. I can't speak French well.
  3. Yes, I can. I can understand Spanish.
  4. Yes, I can. I can count the chairs in this room.
  5. No, we cannot write without a pen or a pencil.
  6. We can write with a fountain pen.
  7. Yes, you may. You may take my textbook.
  8. Yes, she may. She may leave the classroom.

9. Yes, you may. You may go to the pictures.
10. Yes, we must. We must speak English now.
11. If we want to write a letter we must have a sheet of paper and a pen.
12. If we want to buy something we must have money.
13. If we want to wash our hands we must use soap.
14. When I have flu I must take medicine and stay in bed.
15. I must work more in the laboratory to make my reading distinct.

- B.**
1. This pen / It is mine.
  2. This bag / It is yours.
  3. This watch / It is yours.
  4. This watch / It is hers.
  5. This room / It is theirs.
  6. This box / It is ours.
  7. This desk / It is theirs.
  8. This notebook / It is mine.
  9. This cassette recorder / It is ours.
- C.**
1. There are twelve students in our group.
  2. Three students are absent.
  3. Nine students are present.
  4. Kotova is the monitor in our group.
  5. The monitor's name is Nina.
  6. Yes, I have. I have got a new bag.
  7. My bag is in the desk.
  8. Yes, I have. I have got a pen. It is good and blue in colour.
  9. Yes, there is. There is much chalk at the board. / No, there is little chalk at the board.
  10. Yes, I have. I have many books at home.
  11. There are English books in my bag.
  12. Yes, I have. I have got a watch. It is right.
  13. Her watch is fast.
  14. Her dress is brown.
  15. Her pen is yellow.

**Ex. VIII a), p. 105**

1. Can she spell the noun correctly? She cannot spell the noun correctly.

2. May you take your exercise book? You may not take your exercise book.
3. Can he write this in transcription? He cannot write this in transcription.
4. Are there any mistakes in her dictation? There are not any mistakes in her dictation.
5. Has my sister got two interesting magazines? My sister has not got two interesting magazines.
6. Is Doctor Sandford busy in his study? Doctor Sandford is not busy in his study.
7. Is spelling her weak point? Spelling is not her weak point.

**Ex. X, p. 106**

1. must not 2. May 3. can 4. can, can 5. need not 6. must
7. Can 8. must 9. can 10. Must 11. Can

**Ex. XI, p. 106**

**Model 1:** Let's read the text. Let's write on the blackboard. Let's do the exercises. Let's speak to the dean.

**Model 2:** Shall I clean the blackboard? Shall I bring some chalk? Shall I do my homework? Shall I answer your question? Shall I spell the noun? Shall I press the button? Shall I pronounce it?

**Model 3:** Listen to the teacher. Listen to your fellow student. Listen to the radio. Listen to the story. Listen to the text. Listen to the tune. Listen to the cassette recorder. Listen to the actor.

**Model 4:** Look at the picture. Look at the house. Look at the blackboard. Look at the bird. Look at the child. Look at the lamp. Look at the cup. Look at the plate.

**Ex. XIV, p. 107**

1. Who is on duty today? — Helen is. Is anybody absent? — Yes. Three students are absent.
2. Nobody is absent today. All the nine students are present today.



3. Is Victor here? — No, he isn't. He is absent.
4. What date is it today? — It is the 15th of October.
5. May I ask you a question? — Do, please. — Where is Room Forty-Eight? — I can't answer your question. Will you ask the secretary, please?
6. What is the English for «наушники» («письменный стол», «палатализация»)?
7. Shall I switch on the cassette recorder? — Do, please. Shall I switch off the cassette recorder? — No, you needn't, wait a bit. Shall I begin reading / to read? — Do, please. Shall I clean the blackboard? — Do, please. Shall I open the window? — No, you needn't. Shall I read the sentence again? — Do, please.
8. Read louder, please. Speak louder, please. Sing louder, please. That will / That'll do.
9. Repeat the sentence two times / twice. Read the text three times.
10. Let us go to the Dean's office in break. Let us correct the mistakes in the dictation.
11. Will / would you fetch the group register (a piece of chalk, a duster, the list of students, earphones / headphones)?
12. Can you do this exercise today? — Yes, I can. Can you write this text today? — No, I can't. I can't write this text today.
13. These exercises are difficult. Repeat them. These texts are easy. You needn't repeat them.
14. You may sit down / take your seat (go, begin reading).
15. Go on reading (writing, speaking, working).
16. Silence, please. The lesson is not over. How long is it before the bell? — Two minutes only.
17. What is the pronunciation of the word 'palatalization' ('transcription', 'voicelessness')?
18. What is the spelling of the word 'pronunciation' ('magazine', 'enough', 'answer')?
19. Ask questions on / about the text.
20. No helping / whispering, please.
21. Hand in / give in your exercise books, please.
22. First set in the cassette, then switch on the recorder.

23. And now wind the tape back / rewind the tape / play back the tape, please.
24. Do you have classes on Friday? — Yes, we do. But they are over early.
25. May Bob not go to school today? — No, he mustn't. He must go to school.
26. Have another try and read louder.

**Ex. XV, p. 108**

- a) three hundred and ninety-five,  
seven hundred and forty-five,  
one thousand nine hundred and fifty,  
thirteen thousand four hundred and eight,  
two hundred and eighty-two thousand eight hundred and sixty-seven,  
three hundred and forty-five thousand two hundred and ninety-six,  
five million seven hundred and twelve thousand one hundred and thirty-three
- b) two hundred and seventy-three,  
one thousand eight hundred and eighty-two,  
nineteen thousand one hundred and seventy-six,  
thirty thousand and sixteen,  
fifty-five thousand seven hundred and forty-four,  
eighty-one thousand six hundred and fourteen,  
three hundred and eighty-nine thousand one hundred and seven,  
six million two hundred and seventy-one thousand three hundred and ninety-eight

**Ex. XIX, p. 109**

1. Will you use the duster and clean the blackboard, and bring some chalk, please?
2. Tell me the date and write it on the board. Don't stand in front of the board, let the others see it, will you?
3. Come up to my desk and read the text. Don't go so fast. Go to your place, will you?

4. Let us check the homework. The pronunciation of the word 'begin' is wrong. The sound 'b' mustn't be palatalized.
5. Will you collect the exercise books and hand them in?
6. Will you switch on the cassette recorder and listen to the text?
7. Could you, please, play the tape back and switch off the cassette recorder?
8. Have another try and read every line distinctly, please.

## Lesson Nine

### Ex. VII, p. 119

- A.
1. No, it is not large, but it is comfortable and well-planned.
  2. In front of the house there is a green lawn and a lot of flowers. Behind it there is a little orchard with a few fruit trees in it.
  3. On the ground floor there is a kitchen, a pantry, a dining-room, a cosy sitting room and Doctor Sandford's study. There are also several rooms upstairs on the first floor.
  4. The furniture is modern and quite new.
  5. No, it isn't yet. Doctor Sandford says he must pay a lot of money for the house and the furniture before he can call the house his own.
- B.
1. My flat is small.
  2. There are two rooms in my flat.
  3. We call it / a room people sleep in a bedroom.
  4. We call it / a room people have meals in a dining room.
  5. A room where a person studies, reads, writes, etc. is called a study.
  6. A room where children sleep, play and have meals is called a nursery.
  7. A room where people spend time after dinner or supper and where guests are received is called a sitting room.
  8. A room where food is cooked is called a kitchen.
  9. A room where food is kept is called a pantry.
  10. Yes, it is. My flat is comfortable and cosy.

11. No, there is no green lawn in front of our house.
12. Yes, there are. There are a few fruit trees in our garden.
13. Our house is very old.
14. The walls are light-green in my flat.
15. There is a bed, two bedside tables and a wardrobe in my parents' bedroom.
16. No, there are not many new houses in our street.
17. Yes, we have. We have a rubbish chute in our house to carry rubbish down.
18. Yes, we have. We have built-in furniture in our flat.
19. No, she hasn't. She hasn't got a unit in her room.
- c.
  1. Yes, I can. I can read English fluently.
  2. No, I can't. I can't speak French.
  3. My teacher can (answer your question).
  4. You can find this book in the reading room.
  5. Of course, I can (transcribe this word).
  6. But yes, I can. I can speak German rather fluently.
  7. Why, yes, of course. Do, please. (You may ask me a few questions.)
  8. Yes, you may. You may go out (any time you need).
  9. Yes, you may. You may open the window.
  10. No, you may not. You may not take my book.
  11. Yes, you must. You must translate this text.
  12. Yes, we must. We must learn this poem by heart.
  13. No, you needn't. You may put it on the desk.
  14. You must read Chapter Seven now.
  15. You must come home before nine (o'clock).
  16. No, we can't. We can't go to the skating rink at four.

**Ex. VIII, p.120**

- a) one hundred and twenty-two,  
two thousand four hundred and eighty-nine,  
one thousand nine hundred and sixty-three,  
one thousand eight hundred and forty-four,  
eleven thousand three hundred and eighty-nine,  
twenty thousand eight hundred and fifty-six,

one hundred and nineteen thousand nine hundred and twenty-two

- b) It's five past five.  
 It's twenty-five past three.  
 It's half past six.  
 It's twenty-five to four.  
 It's twenty to twelve.  
 It's a quarter past ten.  
 It's twenty past nine.  
 It's ten past five.  
 It's a quarter to five.  
 It's five past seven.  
 It's five to eight.  
 It's ten to nine.

**Ex. IX a), p.120**

1. Are there any fruit trees in front of my house? There are not any fruit trees in front of my house.
2. Is there a study in our flat? There is no study in our flat.
3. Is it a difficult text? It is not a difficult text.
4. Have I a room of my own? I have no room of my own.
5. Can we go out for a walk now? We cannot go out for a walk now.
6. May you open the window? You may not open the window.
7. Must the students learn this dialogue by heart? The students must not learn this dialogue by heart.
8. Must Mr. Sandford pay much money for his house? Mr. Sandford must not pay much money for his house.
9. Must you switch off the cassette recorder? You must not switch off the cassette recorder.

**Ex. X a), p.121**

1. Are there eight fruit trees in your garden? There are eight fruit trees in your garden, aren't there? How many fruit trees are there in your garden? In whose garden are there

- eight fruit trees? What eight trees are there in your garden? Are there eight or nine fruit trees in your garden?
2. Is Mr. Sandford the head of the family? Mr. Sandford is the head of the family, isn't he? Who is the head of the family? What is Mr. Sandford the head of? Is Mr. Sandford or Mrs. Sandford the head of the family?
  3. Can you answer this question? You can answer this question, can't you? Who can answer this question? What question can you answer? Can you answer this or that question?
  4. Can your brother speak French? Your brother can speak French, can't he? Who can speak French? What language can your brother speak? Can your brother speak French or German?
  5. May I ring you up tonight? I may ring you up tonight, may I not? Who may ring you up tonight? When may I ring you up? May I ring you up tonight or tomorrow morning?
  6. May you go home now? You may go home now, may you not? Who may go home now? When may you go home? May you go home now or in half an hour?
  7. Must they prepare this poem for phonetic reading? They must prepare this poem for phonetic reading, mustn't they? Who must prepare this poem for phonetic reading? What must they prepare for phonetic reading? What poem must they prepare for phonetic reading? What must they prepare this poem for? What reading must they prepare this poem for? Must they prepare this poem for phonetic reading or for recitation?
  8. Must you work much at your pronunciation? You must work much at your pronunciation, mustn't you? Who must work much at his / her pronunciation? What must you work much at? How much must you work at your pronunciation? Must you work much at your pronunciation or at your spelling?
  9. Can I see a standard lamp on the right? I can see a standard lamp on the right, can't I? Who can see a standard

lamp on the right? What can I see on the right? Where can I see a standard lamp? Can I see a standard lamp on the right or on the left?

**Ex. XI, p.121**

1. running water / pantry, etc. 2. orchard 3. lawn 4. garden  
5. cosy 6. own / favourite 7. modern 8. carpet 9. rubbish  
chute

**Ex. XIII, p.121**

1. past 2. at 3. in, — 4. in 5. at 6. in 7. by, past, to 8. on 9. at  
10. of 11. for 12. at

**Ex. XIV, p.121**

1. much / little / a little / a lot of 2. some 3. many 4. a few /  
many 5. any / some 6. any 7. some / much / little / a little /  
a lot of / no 8. any / some 9. a few 10. any / many 11. any  
12. no

**Ex. XV, p.122**

1. May I see John's book?  
2. Will you come to my daughter's birthday party?  
3. You must read all Dickens's novels.  
4. He must check his students' works.  
5. Who can tell me the Smiths' address?  
6. There are all modern conveniences in my mother-in-law's  
flat.  
7. May I have a book from your father's library?  
8. Where can I listen to Prokofiev's music?  
9. Is there any built-in furniture in your cousin's flat?

**Ex. XVII, p.122**

1. can 2. can 3. May / Can 4. Must / May 5. can / may 6. May /  
Can 7. need not 8. can 9. May / Can 10. can 11. must / may  
12. May / Can 13. Can 14. must 15. must

**Ex. XX, p. 123**

1. There are many flowers in front of our house.
2. Our flat is on the first floor.
3. May I have a talk with you now or must I come tomorrow?
4. Can I buy this radio set?
5. My sister's flat is very comfortable and cosy.
6. Is there a pantry in your flat? — No, there isn't.
7. There are two rooms and a kitchen in this flat.
8. May the children go to the skating rink? — No, they must not, it's too late already.
9. May I have a talk with the teacher? — Yes, you may.
10. Must I answer you now? — No, you needn't. You may do it tomorrow.
11. There are two beds, an armchair, two chairs and a dressing table in my parents' bedroom.
12. Have you got a TV set? — No, I haven't. — And a refrigerator? — Yes, I have.
13. You may clean the carpet with a vacuum cleaner. It is very easy.
14. I like the furniture in your flat. It is entirely new and quite modern. You must only buy a carpet and a standard lamp for the dining room.
15. I live in a new house. There are all (modern) conveniences in our flat: electricity, gas, running water, central heating, a rubbish chute and a telephone.
16. Is there a mirror in your bathroom?
17. Have you got any English books at home? — No, I haven't.
18. Could / Can you ring me up? — I have no telephone.
19. You must correct all the mistakes in the translation.
20. What is your sister's husband? — He is a doctor.
21. Who is your brother married to? — He is married to my friend / companion. — What is her name? — (Her name is) Helen. — How old is she? / What's her age? — (She is) twenty (years old). — What is she (by profession)? / What is her occupation? — (She is) a typist.



22. Are there any flowers in your garden? — No, there are no flowers in our garden, but there are some fruit trees there / in it.
23. Are there any students in Room Twenty? — No, there are not. They must come there in half an hour.
24. What's the time now? — (It is) half past five. — Your watch is fast. It is only a quarter past five now.
25. I have some free / spare time. I can go to the skating-rink.
26. Is there any milk on the table? — Yes, there is some / a little.

**Ex. XXI, p. 124**

1. He says this sentence is not difficult. — No, it isn't.
2. Mary says there is only one window in their classroom. — Yes, there is.
3. John says there aren't many fruit trees in their Institute garden. — No, there aren't.
4. Betty says Doctor Sandford isn't in. — No, he isn't.
5. Doctor Sandford says his family is not large. — No, it isn't.
6. Helen says she has only one son. — Yes, she has.
7. Mrs. Sandford says Benny is an only child in the family. — Yes, he is.
8. Benny says their house is not large. — No, it isn't.
9. The student says he cannot speak English well. — No, he can't.
10. Betty says she must learn many poems by heart. — Yes, she must.
11. The teacher says it is two o'clock and the classes are over. — Yes, they are.
12. The mother says Tom must come home at a quarter to three. — Yes, he must.
13. The father says he must work till late at night today. — Yes, he must.
14. Bob says he can come in the morning. — Yes, he can.
15. Nick says his sister is married to a sailor. — Yes, she is.

## Lesson Ten

### Ex. IV, p. 132

comes [kʌmz], goes [gʊz], plays [pleɪz], writes [raɪtɪz], washes [ˈwɒʃɪz], stresses [ˈstresɪz], begins [brɪˈɡɪnz], catches [ˈkætʃɪz], cuts [kʌts], eats [i:tɪz], hangs [hæŋz], gets [ɡets], relaxes [rɪˈlæksɪz], holds [hʊldz], knows [nʊz], leads [li:dz], meets [mi:tɪz], rings [rɪŋz], thinks [θɪŋks], understands [ˌʌndəˈstændz], works [wɜ:ks], changes [ˈtʃeɪdʒɪz], opens [ˈɒpənz], pushes [ˈpuʃɪz], kisses [ˈkɪsɪz], studies [ˈstʌdɪz], stays [steɪz], copies [ˈkɒpɪz], says [sez], carries [ˈkæərɪz], watches [ˈwɒtʃɪz]

### Ex. XI, p. 134

- A.**
1. Mr. Sandford is in his study on a Saturday afternoon.
  2. Mr. White comes to see Doctor Sandford on a Saturday afternoon.
  3. Mr. White asks Doctor Sandford if he receives *the Times*.
  4. Mr. White calls on Doctor Sandford to help him to subscribe to the newspaper.
  5. Yes, he does. Doctor Sandford signs the paper.
  6. At five o'clock in the afternoon they have tea in England.
- B.**
1. Yes, I do. I like English.
  2. Yes, I do. I speak English well.
  3. I study English at the University.
  4. Yes, he does. My brother goes to the Institute every day.
  5. Yes, they do. My classes begin in the morning.
  6. I prepare my lessons at home or in the reading room.
  7. My brother goes for a walk in the evening.
  8. My mother speaks two foreign languages — Polish and Latvian.
  9. We write on the blackboard with a piece of chalk.
- C.**
1. It's the fifth of November today.
  2. It is Wednesday today.
  3. Monday is the first day of the week. Tuesday is the second day of the week. Wednesday is the third day of the week. Thursday is the fourth day of the week. Friday is the fifth

day of the week. Saturday is the sixth day of the week. Sunday is the seventh day of the week.

4. January is the first month of the year. February is the second month of the year. March is the third month of the year. April is the fourth month of the year. May is the fifth month of the year. June is the sixth month of the year. July is the seventh month of the year. August is the eighth month of the year. September is the ninth month of the year. October is the tenth month of the year. November is the eleventh month of the year. December is the twelfth month of the year.
5. November is the eleventh month (of the year).
6. June is the sixth month (of the year).
7. December is the twelfth month (of the year).
8. Our studies at the University begin at nine o'clock in the morning.
9. The winter examinations begin on the eighth of January.
10. The summer examinations begin on the fifteenth of June.

**Ex. XII a), p. 134**

1. Do Mr. White and Betty enter the room? Mr. White and Betty don't enter the room.
2. Does Mr. White want to see Dr. Sandford? Mr. White doesn't want to see Dr. Sandford.
3. Can you sign this paper? You can't sign this paper.
4. Do I know any of these names? I don't know any of these names.
5. Can I do anything? I can't do anything.
6. Are the walls in my room light-green? The walls in my room aren't light-green.

**Ex. XIII, p. 135**

1. How many months are there in a year?
2. How many days are there in June?
3. How old is she?
4. Whose friend can skate well?

5. What is he?
6. What do you call it?
7. What books do you like to read?
8. Is it the first of October?
9. What day is it today?
10. Where can you see a bookcase?

**Ex. XIV, p. 135**

1. Are there any newspapers on the desk? There some newspapers on the desk, aren't there? What is there on the desk? Are there any newspapers on the desk or on the table?
2. Do you have tea at five o'clock? You have tea at five o'clock, don't you? What do you have at five o'clock? When do you have tea? Do you have tea or high tea at five o'clock?
3. Do you have two English lessons on Monday? You have two English lessons on Monday, don't you? What lessons do you have on Monday? When do you have two English lessons? How many English lessons do you have on Monday? Do you have two English lessons on Monday or on Thursday?
4. Do your parents live in Moscow? Your parents live in Moscow, don't they? Where do your parents live? Who lives in Moscow? Do your parents live in Moscow or in Smolensk?
5. Is your father a doctor? Your father is a doctor, isn't he? What is your father? Who is a doctor? Is your father a doctor or a teacher?
6. Does your father work at a hospital? Your father works at a hospital, doesn't he? Who works at a hospital? Whose father works at a hospital? Where does your father work? Does your father work at a hospital or at school?
7. Is he forty-five? He is forty-five, isn't he? Who is forty-five? How old is he? Is he forty-five or fifty-five?
8. Do all the members of your family read this paper? All the members of your family read this paper, don't they? Who reads this paper? What do all the members of your

family read? What paper do all the members of your family read? Do all the members of your family read this paper or that magazine?

9. Can you come and see me on Friday? You can come and see me on Friday, can't you? Who can come and see me on Friday? When can you come and see me? What day can you come and see me? Can you come and see me on Friday or on Saturday?
10. May I sign this paper tomorrow? I may sign this paper tomorrow, may I not? Who may sign this paper tomorrow? When may I sign this paper? What may I sign? May I sign this paper tomorrow or the day after tomorrow?

**Ex. XV, p. 135**

the ninth of April nineteen forty-six,  
the eighth of July nineteen twenty-four,  
the first of September eighteen twenty-seven,  
the twelfth of October nineteen fifty-five,  
the fourth of January nineteen forty-nine,  
the eleventh of February nineteen eighteen

**Ex. XVI, p. 135**

1. anything 2. somebody / someone 3. something 4. anything 5. anybody / anyone, somebody 6. anything 7. nobody / no one 8. anybody / anyone 9. something 10. anything 11. something 12. anything 13. nobody / no one 14. everything 15. something 16. everybody 17. everything / anything 18. nothing / something 19. anybody / anyone

**Ex. XVII, p. 136**

1. in 2. in 3. in 4. on 5. on, of 6. in 7. —, at 8. at / in 9. at, on 10. to, at / in 11. at, on 12. on 13. to 14. to 15. To, of

**Ex. XVIII, p. 136**

1. a 2. — 3. the, a, — 4. — 5. a, the 6. a, a, the 7. — 8. the 9. the 10. the 11. a

**Ex. XXII, p. 137**

1. Tom asks if we know English well.
2. She asks if I like to skate.
3. My friend asks if I am free on Sunday.
4. The student asks if I have any English books at home.
5. She asks if I want to read this book.
6. The teacher asks if there are many mistakes in spelling on the blackboard.
7. The student asks if there are any mistakes in his pronunciation.
8. The teacher asks me if I know any poem by heart.
9. Mary asks me if I know many English words.
10. Betty asks Tom if he must go to the Institute today.
11. The teacher asks the boy if May is a spring month.
12. The student asks me if I like our University.
13. Mr. White asks Betty if Doctor Sandford is in.
14. The children ask Betty if she plays the piano.
15. The teacher asks the boy if he has any brothers or sisters.
16. The teacher asks the girls if they can spell the word 'white'.
17. The boy asks his mother if she sees anything on the table.

**Ex. XXIII, p. 137**

1. A: Are you busy?  
B: What do you ask me?  
A: I ask you if you are busy.  
C: What does A. ask you?  
B: A. asks me if I am busy.
2. A: Are the lessons over?  
B: What do you ask me?  
A: I ask you if the lessons are over.  
C: What does A. ask you?  
B: A. asks me if the lessons are over.
3. A: Is he already twenty?  
B: What do you ask me?

- A: I ask you if he is already twenty.  
C: What does A. ask you?  
B: A. asks me if he is already twenty.
4. A: Are there any new words in Lesson Four?  
B: What do you ask me?  
A: I ask you if there are any new words in Lesson Four.  
C: What does A. ask you?  
B: A. asks me if there are any new words in Lesson Four.
5. A: Do you know the pronunciation of all the new words?  
B: What do you ask me?  
A: I ask you if you know the pronunciation of all the new words.  
C: What does A. ask you?  
B: A. asks me if I know the pronunciation of all the new words.
6. A: Is this translation difficult?  
B: What do you ask me?  
A: I ask you if this translation is difficult.  
C: What does A. ask you?  
B: A. asks me if this translation is difficult.
7. A: Do the students of your group work much at their English?  
B: What do you ask me?  
A: I ask you if the students of your group work much at their English.  
C: What does A. ask you?  
B: A. asks me if the students of our group work much at their English.
8. A: Who is the monitor of your group?  
B: What do you ask me?  
A: I ask you who the monitor of your group is.  
C: What does A. ask you?  
B: A. asks me who the monitor of my group is.
9. A: Can you swim?  
B: What do you ask me?  
A: I ask you if you can swim.

- C: What does A. ask you?  
 B: A. asks me if I can swim.
10. A: Must we finish this work today?  
 B: What do you ask me?  
 A: I ask you if we must finish this work today.  
 C: What does A. ask you?  
 B: A. asks me if we must finish this work today.
11. A: Are you fond of animals?  
 B: What do you ask me?  
 A: I ask you if you are fond of animals.  
 C: What does A. ask you?  
 B: A. asks me if I am fond of animals.

**Ex. XXIV, p. 138**

1. I can't do anything / I can do nothing for the present.
2. Nobody wants to eat anything.
3. Can I do anything for you?
4. May I come to see you / come to your place on Sunday?
5. Thursday is the fifth day of the week.
6. My younger sister is ten (years olds / years of age) now.
7. I can't speak English for the present. — Can't you? / Indeed? / Really?
8. Good afternoon, Mr. White. What is it? — May I have a talk with you / a word with you, Mr. Sandford? — Yes, please.
9. What does this word mean? / What is the meaning of this word?
10. Must I sign anything? — Here you are. — Where do I sign? — Here, please.
11. Many of our students work on the farm in autumn.
12. Can you play the grand piano?
13. Can / Could you give me something to read?
14. Who is working / works in Room Four?
15. Find Page Five and read the text.
16. There is not any picture on page Nine.
17. Is there anybody in your parents' room?
18. My son knows many English poems by heart. — Does he?



19. Her daughter is already a schoolgirl. — Is she?
20. I can give you this book. — Can you?
21. Ann must come on Monday. — Must she?
22. Our studies are over in June.
23. Nobody in our family works on Saturday.

## Lesson Eleven

### Ex. VI, p. 147

- slowly ['sləʊli] — more slowly ['mɔ: 'sləʊli] — most slowly  
['mɔ:st 'sləʊli]
- fast [fɑ:st] — faster ['fɑ:stə] — fastest ['fɑ:stɪst]
- hard [hɑ:d] — harder ['hɑ:də] — hardest ['hɑ:dɪst]
- badly ['bædli] — worse [wɜ:s] — worst [wɜ:st]
- much [mʌtʃ] — more [mɔ:] — most [mɔ:st]
- well [wel] — better ['betə] — best [best]
- early ['ɜ:li] — earlier ['ɜ:liə] — earliest ['ɜ:li:st]
- far [fɑ:] — farther ['fɑ:ðə] — farthest ['fɑ:ðɪst]
- near [niə] — nearer ['niərə] — nearest ['niəɪst]
- often ['ɒfən] — more often ['mɔ:r 'ɒfən] — most often ['mɔ:st  
'ɒfən]
- late [leɪt] — later ['leɪtə] — latest ['leɪtɪst]
- quietly ['kwaɪətlɪ] — more quietly ['mɔ: 'kwaɪətlɪ] — most quietly  
['mɔ:st 'kwaɪətlɪ]
- easily ['i:zɪli] — more easily ['mɔ:r 'i:zɪli] — most easily ['mɔ:st  
'i:zɪli]
- little ['lɪtlɪ] — less [les] — least [li:st]
- warmly ['wɔ:mli] — more warmly ['mɔ: 'wɔ:mli] — most warmly  
['mɔ:st 'wɔ:mli]
- seriously ['sɪəriəsli] — more seriously ['mɔ: 'sɪəriəsli] — most  
seriously ['mɔ:st 'sɪəriəsli]
- comfortably ['kʌmfətəbli] — more comfortably ['mɔ: 'kʌmfətəbli] —  
most comfortably ['mɔ:st 'kʌmfətəbli]
- quickly ['kwɪkli] — more quickly ['mɔ: 'kwɪkli] — most quickly  
['mɔ:st 'kwɪkli]

**Ex. VII a), p. 147**

1. Alex is never late for his classes.
2. He usually has dinner at two o'clock.
3. I seldom go to bed before twelve o'clock.
4. I often speak Spanish to my mother.
5. He always works in the lab after his lessons.
6. Do you think that she is still ill?
7. I think she is already at home.
8. I sometimes see him in the library.

**Ex. VIII, p. 148**

1. I know the following traditional holidays in our country: the New Year, Mother's Day, May Day, Easter, Day of Freedom of Russia, Victory Day, Christmas, Teachers' Day and some others.
2. We usually see in the New Year at home.
3. Yes, there is. There is a New-Year tree at our place at that time.
4. The biggest and the most beautiful New-Year tree in Moscow can be seen in the Kremlin.
5. We celebrate Mother's day on the eighth of March.
6. I usually give my mother a bunch of flowers and a present.
7. Victory Day is not only a traditional holiday in our country, it is also an international holiday.
8. On Victory Day we usually go to the war memorials and take flowers there or lay wreathes on the soldiers' graves.
9. In fact people in other countries celebrate Victory Day in the same way.
10. The traditional holiday of teachers in our country is Teachers' Day.
11. My birthday is on the 21<sup>st</sup> of July.
12. No, I don't. I don't always invite guests to my birthday party.
13. I don't like this tradition. / I like this tradition as I am still very young.

14. No, I don't. I don't put candles on my birthday cake because I think it is superfluous.

**Ex. IX, p. 148**

1. arger 2. shorter 3. better 4. fewer 5. most beautiful  
6. colder 7. more difficult 8. easier 9. farthest, quietest

**Ex. XIII, p. 149**

1. to, of 2. to, in 3. in, of, of, of 4. in, of 5. in 6. in 7. of, on  
8. in, of 9. to, of 10. of, of, at, of 11. of, in / of, from 12. of,  
13. in

**Ex. XIV, p. 149**

1. —, the, —, the, — 2. The, the, — 3. the, —, — 4. the 5. —,  
the, the 6. The, the, the 7. the, — 8. — 9. The, — 10. an, a  
11. The, the 12. the 13. the

**Ex. XVI, p. 150**

1. Is Russia a very large country? Russia is a very large country, isn't it? What country is a very large one? What kind of country is Russia? Is Russia a very large or a very small country?
2. Are there more than 100 nationalities in the CIS? There are more than 100 nationalities in CIS, aren't there? How many nationalities are there in the CIS?
3. Is winter very cold in the North of our country? In the North of our country winter is very cold, isn't it? In what part of our country is winter very cold? Is winter very cold or very warm in the North of our country?
4. Are there many rivers and lakes in the North of Russia? There are a lot of rivers and lakes in the North of Russia, aren't there? In what part of Russia are there many rivers and lakes? Are there many rivers and lakes in the North or in the West of Russia?

**Ex. XVII, p. 150**

1. I can see four oceans on the map. They are the Indian Ocean, the Pacific Ocean, the Atlantic Ocean and the Arctic Ocean.
2. Yes, it is. The Pacific is the largest ocean in the world.
3. The Pacific Ocean is the largest one in the world.
4. No, it does not. The Pacific Ocean does not wash Western Europe.
5. The Atlantic Ocean washes Western Europe.
6. The Arctic Ocean washes the northern part of Europe.
7. The Pacific Ocean washes Eastern Asia.
8. The two American continents are North America and South America.
9. I also know Europe, Asia, Africa, Australia and the Antarctic.
10. Australia is a continent.
11. Ireland is an island.
12. Yes, they are. The Alps are higher than the Urals.
13. The highest mountains in Europe are the Caucasus (5,642 m).
14. No, it is not. The Nile is the longest river in the world (6,671 km).
15. No, it is not. The Thames is not so long as the Mississippi, it is much shorter than the Mississippi.
16. The Nile is the longest river in the world.
17. Yes, it is. The Black Sea is in the South.
18. No, it is not. The Baltic Sea is not in the South. It is in the North-West.
19. The White Sea is in the North.
20. The United States is in North America.
21. Japan is in the East.
22. Italy is in the South of Europe.
23. The capital of Bulgaria is Sofia. The capital of Hungary is Budapest. The capital of Rumania is Bucharest.
24. The Spaniards speak Spanish. The Japanese speak Japanese.

**Ex. XX, p. 150**

1. The pupils ask if the United States is in North America.
2. The student asks if the Volga is longer than the Thames.
3. The pupil asks if the Thames is as long as the Volga.
4. My friend asks me if the Baltic Sea is cold.
5. The teacher asks if Budapest is in Hungary.
6. The teacher says (that) the Indian Ocean is warmer than the Arctic Ocean.
7. Betty says (that) her farther speaks two foreign languages — German and French.
8. The teacher says (that) London is the capital of Great Britain.
9. The teacher says (that) Betty speaks German better than Mary.
10. My friend asks if Mary speaks Italian.
11. My mother asks if Helen knows any foreign languages.
12. The teacher says (that) Japanese is a difficult language.
13. The student asks if Japanese is more difficult than Russian.
14. The pupil asks if Prague is the capital of Czechia.
15. The teacher asks me if I can spell the word 'Mississippi'.

**Ex. XXI, p. 151**

- a) He wants to take part in the game.  
 He wants to take part in the play.  
 He wants to take part in the football match.  
 He wants to take part in the demonstration.  
 He wants to take part in the concert.  
 He wants to take part in the discussion.
- b) He doesn't want to take part in the game.  
 He doesn't want to take part in the play.  
 He doesn't want to take part in the football match.  
 He doesn't want to take part in the demonstration.  
 He doesn't want to take part in the concert.  
 He doesn't want to take part in the discussion.

**Ex. XXII a), p. 151**

1. He knows French much better than German.

2. He can do it much better than she (can).
3. He writes dictations much better than his friends.

**Ex. XXIII, p. 151**

**Model 1:** Let me introduce you to my mother. Let me introduce you to my sister. Let me introduce you to my cousin. Let me introduce you to my father-in-law.

**Model 2:** I am ever so glad to see you. I am ever so glad to listen to you. I am ever so glad to do it for you. I am ever so glad to join you.

**Model 3:** Would you join our group? Would you join my friends? Would you join our company? Would you join my family?

**Model 4:** He is (a) Greek. He is (an) Armenian. He is (an) English. He is a Spaniard.

**Model 5:** The Poles live in Poland. The English live in England. The Spanish live in Spain. The French live in France.

**Model 6:** He comes / is from Latvia. She comes / is from Spain. They come / are from France. We come / are from Russia.

**Ex. XXIV, p. 152**

1. During the holidays Moscow looks especially beautiful.
2. Is Women's Day a traditional international holiday?
3. Would you like to see in the New Year with us?
4. A famous / well-known singer is taking part in our contest / competition.
5. The view out of the window of my room is beautiful / splendid.
6. When it is getting dark, people go out into the streets to see the illuminations.
7. There are many foreign guests in Moscow on holidays. They walk about the city and talk to the Russian people / citizens.
8. Do you take part in the work of our English club?
9. Students from different cities of Russia study in our group.
10. My friend knows German much better than I do.

11. He speaks Italian badly but he understands nearly everything.
12. What foreign language does your friend speak?
13. Let me introduce you to my mother.
14. I see a slender / slim black-haired girl at the window.  
What do you think her nationality is? — I know that her mother is a Georgian and her father is a Russian.
15. Among the tourists there were many Bulgarians who spoke Russian well.
16. My birthplace is Moscow.

## **Основной курс**

### **Lesson Twelve**

#### **Ex. II, p. 156**

giving ['gɪvɪŋ], taking ['teɪkɪŋ], beginning [brɪ'ɡɪnɪŋ], buying ['baɪɪŋ], paying ['peɪɪŋ], saying ['seɪɪŋ], listening ['lɪsɪŋ], writing ['raɪtɪŋ], staying ['steɪɪŋ], leaving ['li:vɪŋ], going ['gɔ:ɪŋ], coming ['kʌmɪŋ], dining ['daɪnɪŋ], putting ['pʊtɪŋ], passing ['pɑ:sɪŋ], talking ['tɔ:kɪŋ], working ['wɜ:kɪŋ], getting ['getɪŋ], sitting ['sɪtɪŋ], looking ['lʊkɪŋ], forgetting [fə'getɪŋ], hurrying ['hʌrɪɪŋ], studying ['stʌdɪɪŋ], travelling ['trævəlɪŋ], having ['hævɪŋ], giving ['gɪvɪŋ], tasting ['teɪstɪŋ], preferring [prɪ'fɜ:ɪŋ], bringing ['brɪŋɪŋ], offering ['ɒfərɪŋ], adding ['ædɪŋ]

#### **Ex. III, p. 156**

1. is reading 2. am working 3. is sitting 4. am preparing 5. are working 6. am writing 7. am having 8. are not going 9. is coming 10. is not giving

#### **Ex. IV p. 156**

- a) 1. I am doing Exercise IV on page 156 (at the English lesson).  
2. I am listening to the lecturer (at the lecture).  
3. I am copying the timetable (in the corridor).  
4. I am walking (along the street).  
5. I am making a flowerbed (in the garden).  
6. I am going down the escalator (in the metro).  
7. I am picking up berries and mushrooms (in the forest).  
8. I am having dinner (in the dining room).  
9. I am swimming (in the water).  
10. I am cooking breakfast (in the kitchen).  
11. I am taking a shower (in the bathroom).
- b) 1. My fellow student is also doing Exercise IV on page 156 (at the English lesson).



2. My fellow student is also listening to the lecturer (at the lecture).
3. My fellow student is also copying the timetable (in the corridor).
4. My fellow student is also walking (along the street).
5. My fellow student is also making a flowerbed (in the garden).
6. My fellow student is also going down the escalator (in the metro).
7. My fellow student is also picking up berries and mushrooms (in the forest).
8. My fellow student is also having dinner (in the dining-room).
9. My fellow student is also swimming (in the water).
10. My fellow student is also cooking breakfast (in the kitchen).
11. My fellow student is also taking a shower (in the bathroom).

**Ex. VI p. 156**

1. My father asks me why I don't read English newspapers.
2. Maggy asks me why I am looking at her in that way.
3. My teacher says (that) I have got a number of mistakes in my translation.
4. She asks me what I am going to be when I leave the Institute.
5. I say (that) I am sure I am going to be a teacher.
6. He says (that) Italy is in the South of Europe.
7. My cousin asks me when I am coming to see them.
8. She says (that) she likes the poem, (and) she is going to learn it by heart.
9. Mother asks us not to be late for dinner.
10. Our teacher says (that) we must work more systematically.
11. They ask us not stay here any longer as it is getting dark.

12. The girl says (that) they have a lot of English books at home.
13. The child asks me what I am doing.
14. The mother asks him why he is crying and asks him to come up to her.
15. The boys say to the father (that) they want to help him.
16. Mr. Smith invites me to have dinner with them.
17. The mother tells the children to eat up their porridge.
18. The teacher asks us to find the Thames on the map.
19. They ask John not to make so much noise as the baby is asleep.

**Ex. XI, p. 165**

- A.**
1. I see a dining room in the picture.
  2. The Smiths are in the dining room.
  3. They are having breakfast.
  4. Mrs. Smith is putting some cornflakes on the boy's plate.
  5. The elder daughter is passing the sugar to her father.
  6. No, he doesn't. John doesn't like sugar on his cornflakes.
  7. He prefers milk on his cornflakes.
  8. Ann is already finishing her cornflakes.
  9. Kitty doesn't like cornflakes.
  10. Kitty is just thirsty, she wants some tea and cakes.
  11. Mr. Smith asks his wife to give him a little more cornflakes.
  12. Mrs. Smith doesn't ask her elder daughter to do anything.
  13. The children are still talking over their cornflakes while their father is having his tea.
- B.**
1. The two friends go to the canteen.
  2. For dinner they take mixed salad, chops and mashed potatoes.
  3. They go to the canteen because it's high time to have a bite.
  4. No, they don't. They don't always take soup for dinner.

5. The friends hurry to the meeting of their English club.
6. They must leave at once to be in time for the beginning of the discussion.
- C.**
  1. I have breakfast at seven o'clock.
  2. For breakfast I have a cup of coffee and a couple of sandwiches.
  3. My breakfast is not a square meal.
  4. I usually have dinner at home.
  5. Having dinner at home is less expensive than having it in a restaurant.
  6. For the first course I usually have cabbage soup, for the second course I have fish and mashed potatoes and for dessert I have a glass of stewed prunes.
  7. I usually have dinner at two o'clock in the afternoon.
  8. I cook meals in my family.
  9. It goes without saying I can.
  10. On Sunday I have dinner at three o'clock.
  11. My Sunday dinner is a substantial meal that consists of chicken broth with quenelles, trout and vegetables, and ice cream with jam to finish with.
  12. No, I don't. As a rule I don't have supper late.
  13. Late meals are harmful for our health.
  14. Yes, I do. I like vegetables very much.
  15. I like salad, garlic, onions, carrots, beets, cucumbers, cauliflower, Brussels sprouts, red cabbage, aubergines, marrows, pepper, paprika, tomatoes.
  16. I like salmon soup best.
  17. I like cabbage and aubergine salad.
  18. In summer I buy melons and watermelons and in winter I buy apples and bananas.
  19. I lay the table in a usual / classical way.

**Ex. XII, p. 166**

- A.**
  1. Are they having breakfast? They are not having breakfast.
  2. Is Mrs. Smith putting any cornflakes on the boy's plate? Mrs. Smith is not putting any cornflakes on the boy's plate.

3. Is Ann finishing her cornflakes? Ann is not finishing her cornflakes.
  4. Is Mrs. Smith passing a plate to her husband? Mrs. Smith is not passing a plate to her husband.
  5. Are the children talking over their cornflakes? The children are not talking over their cornflakes.
  6. Are we having an English lesson? We are not having an English lesson.
  7. Is the girl coming into the room? The girl is not coming into the room.
- B.**
1. Am I finishing this article? I am not finishing this article.
  2. Do I prefer a glass of soda water? I don't prefer a glass of soda water.
  3. Is the waitress already bringing in our tea? The waitress is not bringing in our tea yet.
  4. Is the boy writing a letter to his parents? The boy is not writing a letter to his parents.
  5. Is my cousin leaving tomorrow? My cousin is not leaving tomorrow.

**Ex. XIV a), p. 166**

- A.**
1. Is the elder daughter passing the salt to her father? The elder daughter is passing the salt to her father, isn't she? Who is passing the salt to her father? Which daughter is passing the salt to her father? What is the elder daughter passing to her father? Is the elder daughter passing the salt or the sugar to her father?
  2. Are you thirsty now? You are thirsty now, aren't you? Who is thirsty now? Are you thirsty or hungry now?
  3. Is the father having his cup of tea? The father is having his cup of tea, isn't he? Who is having his cup of tea? What is the father having? Is the father having his cup of tea or coffee?
  4. Must you leave in a quarter of an hour? You must leave in a quarter of an hour, mustn't you? Who must leave in a quarter of an hour? When must you leave? What must

you do in a quarter of an hour? Must you leave in a quarter of an hour or in half an hour?

5. Are the children working in the garden? The children are working in the garden, aren't they? Who is working in the garden? Where are the children working? Are the children working in the garden or in the yard?
  6. Are the students reading the text? The students are reading the text, aren't they? Who is reading the text? What are the students reading? Are the students reading or copying the text?
  7. Is the girl going to write a letter? The girl is going to write a letter, isn't she? Who is going to write a letter? What is the girl going to do? What is the girl going to write? Is the girl going to write a letter or a composition?
- B.**
1. Are you ready to go down to the canteen? You are ready to go down to the canteen, aren't you? Who is ready to go down to the canteen? Where are you ready to go down to? Are you ready to go down to the canteen or to the restaurant?
  2. Are you finishing this article? You are finishing this article, aren't you? Who is finishing this article? What are you finishing? What article are you finishing? Are you finishing this or that article?
  3. Do you prefer a glass of soda water? You prefer a glass of soda water, don't you? What do you prefer? Who prefers a glass of soda water? Do you prefer a glass of soda water or a cup of coffee?
  4. Is the waitress already bringing in our tea? The waitress is already bringing in our tea, isn't she? Who is already bringing in our tea? What is the waitress already doing? What is the waitress already bringing in? Whose tea is the waitress already bringing in? Is the waitress already bringing in our tea or their ice cream?
  5. Do I forget about the meeting of our club? I forget about the meeting of our club, don't I? Who forgets about the meeting of our club? What do I forget about? What meeting do I forget about? Do I forget about the meeting of our club or of our chair?

6. Must you leave at once to be in time for the beginning of the discussion? You must leave at once to be in time for the beginning of the discussion, mustn't you? Why must you leave at once? Who must leave at once to be in time for the beginning of the discussion? Must you leave at once to be in time for the beginning or for the end of the discussion?

**Ex. XV, p. 167**

- a) four, fourteen, forty, nine, nineteen, ninety, twelve, thirty-eight, one hundred and fifty-seven, six hundred and seventy-three, eight hundred and twenty-one, one thousand two hundred and thirty-nine, one thousand nine hundred and fifty-five, two thousand and eighteen, three thousand six hundred and eighty-seven, two hundred and seventy-one, two hundred and ninety-nine, nine hundred and forty-five, nine thousand two hundred and twelve, three hundred and twenty-two
- b) the twenty-third of January nineteen sixty-four,  
the seventh of November nineteen forty-five,  
the twenty-second of June nineteen forty-one,  
the fifth of December nineteen eighty-two

**Ex. XVI, p. 167**

- (a) 1. leaves 2. stays 3. stay 4. leaving 5. leave 6. leave 7. stay 8. stay, leave 9. leaving, stay 10. leaving 11. staying, leaving 12. leave, stay
- (b) 1. comes 2. comes / goes 3. comes 4. go 5. coming 6. going, going
- (c) 1. still 2. another 3. another, still 4. more 5. more 6. still 7. more 8. another 9. more 10. more 11. another 12. still 13. still 14. more 15. still 16. still 17. more 18. more 19. more 20. another 21. more 22. still

**Ex. XVII, p. 168**

- A. 1. — 2. to 3. to 4. to 5. — 6. in 7. at 8. in 9. in 10. —, to 11. at, in 12. at, in 13. in 14. out 15. in 16. into, — 17. — 18. for

- В.** 1. for, in 2. for 3. with 4. to 5. to 6. for, for 7. with 8. to 9. for, to 10. to 11. to 12. out of 13. —, in 14. for 15. of

**Ex. XVIII a), p. 168**

1. Do they have supper at eight? They don't have supper at eight.
2. Do you usually have dinner at home? We don't usually have dinner at home.
3. Does father have lunch at his office? Father doesn't have lunch at his office.
4. Does your cousin's family have dinner at five o'clock as a rule? My cousin's family doesn't have dinner at five o'clock as a rule.
5. Does he have dinner in the canteen? He doesn't have dinner in the canteen.
6. Do you always have breakfast at home? I don't always have breakfast at home.
7. Do they usually have lunch together? They don't usually have lunch together.
8. Does your brother have lunch at the plant? My brother doesn't have lunch at the plant.
9. Do you often have dinner at your aunt's? I don't often have dinner at my aunt's.

**Ex. XX, p. 169**

1. I should like some cucumbers now.
2. I should like some chops and mashed potatoes now.
3. I should like some sausage now.
4. I should like some jam now.
5. I should like some sugar now.
6. I should like some bacon and eggs now.
7. I should like some marmalade now.
8. I should like some coffee now.
9. I should like some ice cream now.
10. I should like some chicken now.
11. I should like some bananas now.

**Ex. XXI, p. 169****Model 1:**

1. Shall I speak English?
2. Shall I open the window?
3. Shall I read the exercise?
4. Shall I do it at once?
5. Shall I repeat this poem?
6. Shall I learn it by heart?
7. Shall I clear the table?
8. Shall I answer your question?
9. Shall I lay the table?
10. Shall I make tea for us?

**Model 2:**

1. Shall I look it up in the dictionary?
2. Shall I step aside? Shall I read it up for you?
3. Shall I teach you how to swim?
4. Shall I speak louder?
5. Shall I spell it?
6. Shall I take you around Moscow by car?
7. Shall I help you to look for it?
8. Shall I give you mine?

**Ex. XXII, p. 170**

1. So do I. So does my brother.
2. So am I. So are the students of Group 103.
3. So is mine. So am I.
4. So is mine. So am I.
5. So do I. So does my brother.
6. Neither do I. Neither does my sister.
7. So does my uncle. So do we.
8. Neither do I. Neither does my cousin.
9. Neither do I. Neither does my father.
10. Neither can we. Neither can my friend.
11. So do I. So does my brother.
12. Neither do I. Neither does my mother.
13. Neither can I. Neither can my daughter.
14. So do we. So do the Browns.



15. So am I. So are the first-year students.
16. So am I. So are the postgraduate students.
17. So is mine. So is my niece.
18. Neither are our neighbours.
19. So is mine. So is my cousin's (father).

**Ex. XXIII a), p. 170**

1. Mrs. Smith asks John if he will have sugar on his cornflakes.
2. John thanks his mother and says that he would like some more milk instead.
3. Mr. Smith asks Kitty why she isn't eating anything and adds that Ann is already finishing her cornflakes.
4. Kitty says that she doesn't like cornflakes. She says that she is just thirsty and asks her mother to give her some tea and cakes.
5. Mrs. Smith asks Kitty to be a good girl and to have some more cornflakes. She says that they are going to have bacon and eggs and then Kitty will get her tea with toast and marmalade.
6. Mr. Smith asks his wife to give him a little more cornflakes.
7. Mrs. Smith asks her husband if he will have some bacon and eggs.
8. Mr. Smith asks for a strong cup of tea and says (that) he is afraid he must leave in a quarter of an hour or so.

**Ex. XXV, p. 170**

1. They have neither a son nor a daughter.
2. She can do neither sing nor dance.
3. I use neither pepper nor mustard.
4. He speaks neither English nor French.
5. I like neither football nor hockey.
6. She knows neither my cousin nor my brother.
7. I am going to buy neither cabbage nor potatoes.
8. I am going to have neither coffee nor cake.

9. My cousin likes neither autumn nor winter.
10. We need neither cucumbers nor tomatoes.
11. She knows neither physics nor mathematics.
12. We see neither the child nor her mother.
13. You've got neither grammar nor pronunciation mistakes.
14. Neither my schoolmates nor my fellow students are to come to my birthday party.

**Ex. XXVIII, p. 171**

- A.**
1. They are having dinner.
  2. When do you usually have dinner?
  3. What are we having for supper today?
  4. Are you having dinner now? / You are having dinner now, aren't you? I shall ring you up in a quarter of an hour then. All right? / OK?
  5. Take off your coat and come in. We are just having dinner.
  6. What time does your family usually have dinner?
  7. Is Nina in / at home? — Yes, she is. She is having dinner.
  8. What are you looking at? — I am looking at that new house. It's a beautiful building. Do you see it?
  9. Good morning / Good afternoon, Sergeyev! Where are you going to? — I am going to the University. I want to listen to Lesson Twelve in the laboratory once more.
  10. What are you doing, Bob? — I am writing a letter, don't you see?
  11. Are you going to the library? — No, I am not. I am going to the English study room.
  12. Why are you smoking here? The child / baby is sleeping in the room.
  13. Why are you speaking Russian? You are at the English lesson, aren't you?
  14. Don't hurry. The lecture begins only in half an hour.
  15. Do you hear me, friends / comrades?
  16. Are you listening (to me), Petrov?

17. Do you hear well?
  18. Why don't you answer my question? Can you answer my question?
  19. Don't cry / shout so loudly, your sister is sleeping.
  20. Why are you crying, my little kiddy / my little one? — I am not crying.
  21. What are the students doing? — They are answering the teacher's questions. (They are listening to Text Twelve).
  22. What are you thinking about? It's (high) time to do your homework / to prepare for your lessons. (It's high time to get up. It's high time to go to school. It's high time to go to bed).
  23. Why are you putting so few plates on the table? We are five today. Grandfather is coming, do you know?
  24. Sit down to table, mother is bringing soup.
  25. Shall I read this proverb to you?
  26. Shall I cook dinner by four o'clock?
  27. Shall I write this word on the blackboard?
  28. Shall I salt the soup?
  29. Shall I fetch (a piece of) chalk?
  30. Shall I clean the blackboard?
  31. Shall I buy vegetables?
  32. Do you have dinner at home?
  33. He doesn't have dinner at home, he usually has dinner in the canteen.
  34. When / What time do you have breakfast?
  35. Why do you have / are you having breakfast so late?
  36. Does he always have supper at home?
  37. Why doesn't he have dinner at home?
  38. I'd like another cup of tea (milk, water, coffee).
  39. I'd like (some) more milk (porridge, jam, bread, fish).
  40. He is still at home (in the laboratory, in the hospital).
  41. I'm thirsty. Let's take a bottle of soda water.
- B.**
1. It's (high) time to have dinner (to have breakfast, to have supper).
  2. It's high time to know this material.

3. Let's have (some) clear soup / broth for the first course.
4. Who(m) are you waiting for? — I'm waiting for my girlfriend, we are going to the theatre together. (I'm waiting for our teacher, he is at the Dean's office).
5. Is the dining room / the canteen downstairs or upstairs?
6. Will you go downstairs to the library and take the book, please?
7. I prefer fruit to ice cream (pepper to mustard, cold to heat).
8. What do you say to a cup of tea (to a bottle of soda water)?
9. This film is out of the question, it is not for children.
10. Will you pass me the salt, please. — Here you are. — Thank you. — Not at all.
11. Where is the chalk? Will you give me a piece of chalk? — Here it is. Thank you. — Not at all.
12. I can't find anything to my taste today. — Can't you? There are so many tasty / delicious things today. Look, there is tomato and cucumber salad, ham, sausage.
13. It's already six (o'clock). — You don't say so! It's (high) time to go home.
14. Who(m) are you waiting here for? It is already a quarter past eight. Come on / along. — Just a moment. / Wait a minute. Nina is coming with us. I am waiting for her. — I'm afraid, we are going to be late. It's (high) time to be at the Institute. — You are right. Look, she is already coming. Run along! We are not to / mustn't be late. — Hurry up, Nina!

**Ex. XXIX, p. 172**

to; past, in; of; —; to, at / near, from; for; to, with; up to; on, in, of; for, of, of; to; with, in; for; on, out into

**Ex. XXXI, p. 173**

1. Fetch some water. Fetch the water.

2. Don't take the paper. Give me a sheet of paper. Give me the paper.
3. I'd like (to have) some jam. I like the jam, it is very tasty.
4. Have a glass of milk. Have some milk. Have the milk.
5. Put the cabbage on the table, I'm going to cook dinner. Buy some cabbage, I'm going to cook cabbage soup today.
6. Have some more porridge. — I don't like the porridge. It's too salty. / There's too much salt in it.
7. The soup is in the kitchen. Fetch it here, please. I'm very hungry. Give me some soup.
8. Don't buy these cucumbers, I don't like them. Don't buy (any) cucumbers.
9. I'd like (to have) some coffee. I'd like to have another cup of coffee.
10. Don't forget to buy (some) bread. Don't leave the bread on the table, put it into the sideboard.
11. Will you fetch the chalk, please? Will you give me some chalk, please?

## Lesson Thirteen

### Ex. II, p. 177

be [bi:] — was [wɒz], were [wɜ:] — been [bi:n] — being ['bi:ɪŋ]  
 do [du:] — did [dɪd] — done [dʌn] — doing ['du:ɪŋ]  
 have [hæv] — had [hæd] — had [hæd] — having ['hævɪŋ]  
 see [si:] — saw [sɔ:] — seen [si:n] — seeing ['si:ɪŋ]  
 strike [straɪk] — struck [strʌk] — struck [strʌk] — striking  
 ['straɪkɪŋ]  
 get [get] — got [ɡɒt] — got [ɡɒt] — getting ['getɪŋ]  
 open ['ɒpən] — opened ['ɒpənd] — opened ['ɒpənd] — opening  
 ['ɒpənɪŋ]  
 turn [tɜ:n] — turned [tɜ:nd] — turned [tɜ:nd] — turning  
 ['tɜ:nɪŋ]  
 wash [wɒʃ] — washed [wɒʃt] — washed [wɒʃt] — washing  
 ['wɒʃɪŋ]

- take [teɪk] — took [tʊk] — taken ['teɪkən] — taking ['teɪkɪŋ]  
 dry [draɪ] — dried [draɪd] — dried [draɪd] — drying ['draɪɪŋ]  
 clean [kli:n] — cleaned [kli:nd] — cleaned [kli:nd] — cleaning  
 ['kli:nɪŋ]  
 go [ɡoʊ] — went [went] — gone [ɡɒn] — going ['ɡoɪŋ]  
 dress [dres] — dressed [drest] — dressed [drest] — dressing  
 ['dresɪŋ]  
 put [pʊt] — put [pʊt] — put [pʊt] — putting ['pʊtɪŋ]  
 make [meɪk] — made [meɪd] — made [meɪd] — making ['meɪkɪŋ]  
 sweep [swi:p] — swept [swept] — swept [swept] — sweeping  
 ['swi:pɪŋ]  
 clear [kliə] — cleared [kliəd] — cleared [kliəd] — clearing  
 ['kliəɪŋ]  
 stay [steɪ] — stayed [steɪd] — stayed [steɪd] — staying ['steɪɪŋ]  
 say [seɪ] — said [sed] — said [sed] — saying ['seɪɪŋ]  
 hurry ['hʌri] — hurried ['hʌrɪd] — hurried ['hʌrɪd] — hurry-  
 ing ['hʌrɪŋ]  
 begin [brɪ'ɡɪn] — began [brɪ'ɡæn] — begun [brɪ'ɡæn] — beginning  
 [brɪ'ɡɪnɪŋ]  
 prepare [prɪ'peə] — prepared [prɪ'peəd] — prepared [prɪ'peəd] —  
 preparing [prɪ'peərɪŋ]  
 come [kʌm] — came [keɪm] — come [kʌm] — coming ['kʌmɪŋ]  
 work [wɜ:k] — worked [wɜ:kt] — worked [wɜ:kt] — working  
 ['wɜ:kɪŋ]  
 press [pres] — pressed [prest] — pressed [prest] — pressing  
 ['presɪŋ]  
 iron ['aɪən] — ironed ['aɪənd] — ironed ['aɪənd] — ironing  
 ['aɪənɪŋ]  
 gather ['ɡæðə] — gathered ['ɡæðəd] — gathered ['ɡæðəd] —  
 gathering ['ɡæðərɪŋ]  
 play [pleɪ] — played [pleɪd] — played [pleɪd] — playing ['pleɪɪŋ]  
 repair [rɪ'peə] — repaired [rɪ'peəd] — repaired [rɪ'peəd] — re-  
 pairing [rɪ'peərɪŋ]  
 knit [nɪt] — knit [nɪt] — knit [nɪt] — knitting ['nɪtɪŋ]  
 listen ['lɪsn] — listened ['lɪsnd] — listened ['lɪsnd] — listening  
 ['lɪsnɪŋ]  
 hang [hæŋ] — hung [hʌŋ] — hung [hʌŋ] — hanging ['hæŋɪŋ]

change [tʃeɪndʒ] — changed [tʃeɪndʒd] — changed [tʃeɪndʒd] —  
 changing [ˈtʃeɪndʒɪŋ]  
 want [wɒnt] — wanted [ˈwɒntɪd] — wanted [ˈwɒntɪd] — want-  
 ing [ˈwɒntɪŋ]  
 finish [ˈfɪnɪʃ] — finished [ˈfɪnɪʃt] — finished [ˈfɪnɪʃt] — finish-  
 ing [ˈfɪnɪʃɪŋ]  
 know [nɒʊ] — knew [nju:] — known [nɒʊn] — knowing [ˈnɒʊɪŋ]  
 help [help] — helped [helpɪ] — helped [helpɪ] — helping  
 [ˈhelpɪŋ]  
 fire [faɪə] — fired [ˈfaɪəd] — fired [ˈfaɪəd] — firing [ˈfaɪərɪŋ]  
 show [ʃəʊ] — showed [ʃəʊd] — shown [ʃəʊn] — showing  
 [ˈʃəʊɪŋ]

**Ex. III, p. 177**

1. No, I haven't. I haven't had dinner yet.
2. Yes, I have. I have had coffee today.
3. Yes, he has. My brother has left for Kiev.
4. No, she hasn't. She has never met your elder brother.
5. No, she hasn't. Mary hasn't been to the canteen yet.
6. No, I haven't. I haven't found anything to my taste on the menu.
7. No, they haven't. They haven't paid for the lunch yet.
8. We have discussed the novel by Oscar Wilde "The Picture of Dorian Gray".
9. I have paid fifty roubles for the supper.
10. No, I haven't. I haven't learned / learnt this poem by heart.
11. Yes, I have. I have made few mistakes in spelling.
12. I have found this book in the attic.
13. I have learned / learnt Lesson Twelve by heart.
14. I have already read "Vanity Fair" by William Thackeray and other English classics of the previous century.

**Ex. IV, p. 178**

1. tells 2. tells 3. tells 4. tells 5. tells 6. says 7. says 8. tells
9. says 10. tells 11. says 12. tells 13. says 14. says

**Ex. V, p. 178**

1. Mary says to me (that) she is already finishing this book.
2. The girl says to her mother (that) she doesn't like porridge.
3. Tom says to his friend (that) he is going to the canteen.
4. The boy says to me (that) he is thirsty.
5. The teacher says to the students (that) they must be ready for the written test tomorrow.
6. Nick says to his mother (that) he has already had dinner.
7. Boris says to me (that) his father is leaving for Kiev.
8. Nick says to me (that) he has already paid for the lunch.
9. Ida says to her friends (that) there is nothing to her taste on the menu.
10. The girl says to her sister (that) she hasn't finished her supper yet.
11. Tom says (that) he can speak two foreign languages — English and Spanish.
12. Mary asks if the bell has gone.
13. Tom asks if Mary is staying at home.
14. Nick asks / tells Ann not to forget to air the room.
15. John asks his father if she has left.
16. Tom asks Mary what their next lesson is.

**Ex. V, p. 185**

1. I get up at seven o'clock.
2. It depends. In winter it is dark when I get up.
3. Yes, I do. I do my morning exercises to music.
4. I take a shower in the bathroom.
5. I brush / clean my teeth with a toothbrush, dry myself on / with a towel and do my hair with a comb.
6. I take a shower both in the morning and before I go to bed.
7. I clean my teeth with toothpaste.
8. I dry myself on / with a towel.
9. I do my hair before a mirror.



10. I usually have breakfast at half past seven.
11. After meals I must wash up.
12. Before I leave the University I usually go to the library to look through the latest periodicals or to take some books.
13. I clean my flat with a vacuum cleaner.
14. I leave for the University at half past eight.
15. No, it doesn't. It doesn't take me long to get to the University.
16. It takes me a quarter of an hour to get to the University.
17. Yes, I do. I go to the University by bus.
18. My classes begin at nine o'clock sharp.
19. When the classes are over I go to the canteen.
20. I usually have dinner at home.
21. I prefer to work in the University reading room.
22. It usually takes me five hours to do my homework.
23. Yes, I do. I work at the laboratory every day.
24. I usually come home at five o'clock.
25. When I come home I usually change my clothes and wash my hands.
26. I help my mother about the house in different ways: I wash up, water the flowers, dust the furniture.
27. I iron linen with an electric iron, clean the rooms with a vacuum cleaner, sweep the floor in the kitchen with a broom.
28. In the evening I usually go out for a walk.
29. I don't often go to the theatre or to the cinema.
30. Yes, I am. I am fond of skating.
31. When I stay at home in the evening I read books and write articles.
32. No, they don't. My friends don't often come to see me.
33. When my friends come to see me I play the piano and we listen to music.
34. Yes, I do. I listen to the news every day.
35. When I am going to listen to the news I switch on the TV set.

36. I usually go to bed at a quarter to twelve.

37. My sister does the shopping in our family.

**Ex. VI a), p. 186**

1. Has Mary ironed the tablecloth yet? Mary hasn't yet ironed the tablecloth.
2. Have I turned off the light yet? I haven't yet turned off the light.
3. Have the girls done the room yet? The girls haven't yet done the room.
4. Does it take me long to prepare for my English lessons? It doesn't take me long to prepare for my English lessons.
5. Has it taken Peter five minutes to shave? It hasn't taken Peter five minutes to shave.
6. Are we going to the skating rink after classes? We aren't going to the skating rink after classes.
7. Is my sister very good at sewing? My sister isn't very good at sewing.
8. Is Peter going to repair our TV set? Peter isn't going to repair our TV set.
9. Are we going for a walk after classes? We aren't going for a walk after classes.
10. Must I do any knitting today? I mustn't do any knitting today.

**Ex. VII a), p. 186**

1. When do you have dinner?
2. When do you leave for the Institute?
3. How do you go to the Institute? Where do you go by bus?
4. How long has it taken you to do your homework? What has it taken you three hours (to do)?
5. Who has already repaired the radio? What has David already repaired?
6. How long has it taken you to knit this sweater? What has it taken you a fortnight (to do)?

7. Where are you going to have some practice in intonation?
8. Where are you going to today? When are you going to the theatre?
9. Who is going to press his coat? What is Robert going to press? Whose coat is Robert going to press?
10. What do you do your room with once a week? How often do you do your room with a vacuum cleaner?
11. Why needn't you switch on the light?
12. Who has gone to bed?
13. How long does it take you to have breakfast? What does it take you a quarter of an hour (to do)?
14. Do you take a bath every morning? What do you take every morning?
15. How do you go to the Institute?
16. Where are you going to?
17. What do you do your hair with?

**Ex. VIII, p. 186**

1. I have already had some practice in the laboratory.
2. I have just cleaned the flat.
3. John has just shaved.
4. They have already had a rest in the country.
5. Ann has just turned off the gas.
6. The boy has already brushed his clothes.
7. I have just turned on the light.
8. His family has just listened to the seven o'clock news.
9. Who has already had a bite?
10. What have you already done?
11. They have already stayed out of town for a fortnight.
12. I have just looked through his article.

**Ex. X, p. 187**

1. a 2. a 3. the, a 4. the, — / the 5. the, — 6. the, —, — 7. —
8. the, the 9. —, a, — 10. the, the 11. a, — 12. —

**Ex. XI, p. 187**

1. at, down, to, till, on, — 2. of, for 3. to 4. up 5. off, to 6. on, to 7. —, off, on, to, on, on/with 8. with 9. off 10. for 11. at 12. off, on 13. on, to 14. by 15. up, of 16. with

**Ex. XII, p. 188**

- A. 1. wrong, right 2. sleeping 3. ready 4. shower / bath, clean / brush 5. rest 6. washed, dry 7. brush / clean 8. clean, do 9. knit / knitted 10. listen, watch, go, come 11. go 12. gets up 13. towel 14. concert / meeting / party 15. electric iron, look 16. light 17. table 18. pressed
- B. 1. older 2. younger 3. more 4. warmer 5. longer 6. more / less 7. most 8. fine / well 9. better / worse
- C. 1. Finish 2. done 3. make 4. do 5. does 6. do / clean 7. do 8. make 9. make

**Ex. XIII, p. 189**

1. Those apples are not so tasty as these ones.
2. The Don is not so long as the Volga is.
3. Your house is not so tall as my house is / as mine.
4. Your pronunciation is worse than that of Tom.
5. The winter in London is not so cold as that in Moscow.
6. My mother is not so young as yours.

**Ex. XIV, p. 189**

- a) It takes me a quarter of an hour to get to the Institute.  
It takes him an hour and a half to repair the radio.  
It takes Mary an hour to prepare for the English lesson.  
It takes them long to get home.  
It takes us an hour and a half to prepare for the English lesson.  
It takes you long to get to the Institute.  
It takes Mary a quarter of an hour to get home.
- b) How long does it take Tom to get to the club?  
How long does it take Ann to do the flat?  
How long does it take you to clean the windows?

How long does it take them to have dinner?

How long does it take you to do the flat?

- c) It doesn't take me long to take a shower.  
 It doesn't take Mary long to cook dinner.  
 It doesn't take Bob long to get home.  
 It doesn't take us long to learn the dialogue by heart.  
 It doesn't take you long to cook dinner.  
 It doesn't take them long to get home.  
 It doesn't take us long to cook dinner.

**Ex. XV a), p. 189**

1. Has she? 2. Hasn't it? 3. Have you? 4. Has it? 5. Haven't you? 6. Has she? 7. Have you? 8. Haven't you? 9. Haven't you? 10. Have you?

**Ex. XIX, p. 190**

- A. 1. Is Peter asleep yet? — No, he is already awake / has already woken up.  
 2. When I come home, I go to the bathroom, turn on the tap / faucet, wash my hands and dry them on / with the towel.  
 3. You must air the bedroom before going to bed / you go to bed.  
 4. The mother asks the boy to take the broom and sweep the floor.  
 5. Do you go to the Institute by bus?  
 6. What do you usually do after classes?  
 7. Take off the coat and hang it on the hook.  
 8. Let's have a dance. — With pleasure.  
 9. Do you usually do morning exercises to (the) music? — Yes, I do.  
 10. How long does it take you to get to the Institute? — About half an hour. / Half an hour or so.  
 11. It takes me a quarter of an hour to do my hair and to get dressed.  
 12. Something has gone wrong with the TV set, it doesn't work.

13. Plug in the iron, please, and press the father's coat.
  14. What are you doing (now)? — I am ironing (linen).
  15. At eight o'clock father puts on his coat and hat and goes to work.
  16. What are you going to do? — I am going to take / have a bath.
  17. Let us go to the skating rink! — I am afraid, I can't.
  18. Let me help you (to) do / tidy up / clean the room.
  19. How long has it taken you to prepare Laboratory Work Twelve?
  20. It's very hot. I'd like to take / have a cold shower.
  21. The boy has already finished his porridge and is having coffee and / with a sandwich.
  22. I (have) opened the window to air the room.
  23. Have you already knitted / worked the sweater? — Not yet. I am going to finish it tomorrow.
  24. Hurry up or we'll be late for the first lesson.
  25. Where is your sister? — She is washing up in the kitchen.
  26. The boy asked his mother to sew a / the button on his coat.
  27. Let us turn / switch on the tape recorder and listen to (the) music.
  28. What are you doing? — I am preparing for my English lesson. — What are you going to do next? — I am going to play the grand piano.
  29. Have you heard the latest news? — Yes, I have.
  30. What are you doing? — I have washed (the) linen and now I am ironing it.
  31. Let us get together / gather after classes and have a walk together.
  32. I like the dress (that) you were wearing yesterday.
  33. Why is it dark in the room? — Something has gone wrong with the lamp.
  34. Are you sure (that) you have switched off the light? — Yes, I am.
- B. 1. Almost every family has a radio or a TV in the country now. That is why people can watch TV / TV programmes

or listen to the radio at home. Some of them go to the reading room to read a book, a newspaper or a magazine. Others go to the club, if there is a concert there or a new film is on.

2. Will it do a child any good to sit up in front of the TV set (for) the whole evening? — Of course not. Children must spend more time out-of-doors / in the open air.
3. What do you usually do in the evening(s)? — We usually stay at home. Once or twice a week we go to the skating-rink, to the theatre or to the cinema. My sister is fond of music / likes music very much and often goes to the concerts. We sometimes watch TV if there is something interesting on the programme. — Are you going out to-night / this evening? — I don't think so. Let us go to our University club then. There will be a concert there. You are sure to like it. — Thank you, with pleasure.
4. Something has gone wrong with the radio / the wireless. It doesn't work. Let me have a look at it. — Do you think you can put it right? — Certainly. / Of course. / Sure. — How long will it take you to do it? — Quite a little time. / Not too long. It's ready. Here you are. — How clever of you! Thank you very much. — Not at all.

## Lesson Fourteen

### Ex. II, p. 196

tell [tel] — told [tɔld] — told [tɔld] — telling ['telɪŋ]  
 go [gɔʊ] — went [went] — gone [ɡɒn] — going ['ɡɔɪŋ]  
 come [kam] — came [keɪm] — come [kam] — coming ['kʌmɪŋ]  
 walk [wɔ:k] — walked [wɔ:kt] — walked [wɔ:kt] — walking  
     ['wɔ:kɪŋ]  
 give [ɡɪv] — gave [ɡɛv] — given ['ɡɪvən] — giving ['ɡɪvɪŋ]  
 take [teɪk] — took [tʊk] — taken ['teɪkən] — taking ['teɪkɪŋ]  
 put [pʊt] — put [pʊt] — put [pʊt] — putting ['pʊtɪŋ]  
 say [seɪ] — said [sed] — said [sed] — saying ['seɪɪŋ]

speak [spi:k] — spoke [spʊk] — spoken ['spʊkən] — speaking  
 ['spi:kɪŋ]

hear [hiə] — heard [hɜ:d] — heard [hɜ:d] — hearing ['hiəriŋ]

see [si:] — saw [sɔ:] — seen [si:n] — seeing ['si:ɪŋ]

read [ri:d] — read [red] — read [red] — reading ['ri:diŋ]

write [raɪt] — wrote [rʊt] — written ['rɪtən] — writing ['raɪtɪŋ]

finish ['fɪnɪʃ] — finished ['fɪnɪʃt] — finished ['fɪnɪʃt] — finish-  
 ing ['fɪnɪʃɪŋ]

begin [brɪŋ] — began [brɪgən] — begun [brɪgən] — beginning  
 [brɪŋɪŋ]

make [meɪk] — made [meɪd] — made [meɪd] — making ['meɪkɪŋ]

show [ʃəʊ] — showed [ʃəʊd] — shown [ʃəʊn] — showing  
 ['ʃəʊɪŋ]

enter ['entə] — entered ['entəd] — entered ['entəd] — entering  
 ['entərɪŋ]

teach [ti:tʃ] — taught [tɔ:t] — taught [tɔ:t] — teaching ['ti:tʃɪŋ]

study ['stʌdi] — studied ['stʌdɪd] — studied ['stʌdɪd] — study-  
 ing ['stʌdɪŋ]

find [faɪnd] — found [faʊnd] — found [faʊnd] — finding  
 ['faɪndɪŋ]

get [get] — got [ɡɒt] — got [ɡɒt] — getting ['getɪŋ]

leave [li:v] — left [left] — left [left] — leaving ['li:vɪŋ]

stay [steɪ] — stayed [steɪd] — stayed [steɪd] — staying ['steɪɪŋ]

pay [peɪ] — paid [peɪd] — paid [peɪd] — paying ['peɪɪŋ]

eat [i:t] — ate [et] — eaten ['i:tən] — eating ['i:tɪŋ]

drink [drɪŋk] — drank [dræŋk] — drunk [drʌŋk] — drinking  
 ['drɪŋkɪŋ]

prefer [prɪfɜ:] — preferred [prɪfɜ:d] — preferred [prɪfɜ:d] —  
 preferring [prɪfɜ:ɪŋ]

ask [ɑ:sk] — asked [ɑ:skt] — asked [ɑ:skt] — asking ['ɑ:skɪŋ]

answer [ɑ:nsə] — answered [ɑ:nsəd] — answered [ɑ:nsəd] —  
 answering [ɑ:nsərɪŋ]

pass [pɑ:s] — passed [pɑ:st] — passed [pɑ:st] — passing  
 ['pɑ:sɪŋ]

stop [stɒp] — stopped [stɒpt] — stopped [stɒpt] — stopping  
 ['stɒpɪŋ]



prepare [pri'peə] — prepared [pri'peəd] — prepared [pri'peəd] —  
 preparing [pri'peəriŋ]  
 travel ['trævl] — travelled ['trævld] — travelled ['trævld] —  
 travelling ['trævliŋ]  
 examine [ɪg'zæmɪn] — examined [ɪg'zæmɪnd] — examined  
 [ɪg'zæmɪnd] — examining [ɪg'zæmɪniŋ]  
 offer ['ɒfə] — offered ['ɒfəd] — offered ['ɒfəd] — offering  
 ['ɒfəriŋ]  
 plan [plæn] — planned [plænd] — planned [plænd] — plan-  
 ning ['plæniŋ]  
 carry ['kæri] — carried ['kærid] — carried ['kærid] — carrying  
 ['kæriŋ]  
 occur [ə'kɜ:] — occurred [ə'kɜ:d] — occurred [ə'kɜ:d] — occur-  
 ring [ə'kɜ:riŋ]  
 quarrel ['kwɒrəl] — quarrelled ['kwɒrəld] — quarrelled  
 ['kwɒrəld] — quarrelling ['kwɒrəliŋ]

## Ex. III, p. 196

1. My sister worked hard at her English last year.
2. They had to write many exercises at home (when they were first-year students).
3. (When the professor taught them) the students spoke only English at the lesson.
4. Our lesson began at 12 on Thursday.
5. Our family got up at 8 o'clock on Sunday (when we lived in the country).
6. I usually prepared my homework in the morning (when I was a sandwich / part-time student).
7. Before going to bed I could rest for half an hour and listen to the news (when I was a sophomore).
8. We often had to work together (when we were freshers).
9. We gathered at the club every Saturday (when we were undergraduates).
10. The girl read about 20 pages every day (when she was in the first year at the University).
11. In the morning she took a cold shower, dried herself on the towel and cleaned her teeth before she put on her clothes.

12. We didn't understand those words (as there was much noise in the room).
13. The boys did morning exercises every day (when they stayed in the camp for summer).
14. Why didn't you turn off the cassette recorder when you left the room?
15. How long did it take you to get to the theatre last time? — It took me half an hour to get there.

**Ex. IV, p. 196**

1. Did Ann get a good mark yesterday? Ann didn't get a good mark yesterday.
2. Did we translate the text two days ago? We didn't translate the text two days ago.
3. Was he translating the text at that time? He wasn't translating the text at that time.
4. Did he come home late last night? He didn't come home late last night.
5. Did she finish her work half an hour ago? She didn't finish her work half an hour ago.
6. Did they have breakfast at 8? They didn't have breakfast at 8.
7. Were they waiting for us then? They weren't waiting for us then.
8. Did your friend see this film last week? Your friend didn't see this film last week.
9. Was he looking at the people in the hall? He wasn't looking at the people in the hall.
10. Was there a mistake in his text? There wasn't a mistake in his text.
11. Was Ann having dinner at six o'clock? Ann wasn't having dinner at six o'clock.
12. Did they have to take four exams? They didn't have to take four exams.

**Ex. V, p. 197**

1. Yes, I have. I have bought this book.

2. I bought it the day before yesterday.
3. Yes, I have. I have seen this play.
4. I saw it a month ago.
5. Yes, I have. I have made it myself.
6. I made it on the eve of my birthday party.
7. I was writing a letter at seven last night.
8. No, I was not. I was not knitting at that moment.
9. I was reading an e-zine when you entered.
10. I was singing an English folk song when he came.
11. I couldn't help laughing when I saw him.
12. The baby was crying because he was thirsty.
13. I was listening in when you rang me up.
14. They were writing a message when the teacher entered.
15. He was listening to music when you called him.
16. I was reading a manuscript when the doorbell rang.
17. We were going to the library when you stopped us.
18. The boy was running to the shed when I saw him.

**Ex. VI, p. 197**

1. He said (that) he wanted to see me that day.
2. She said (that) she was free that night and asked if she might come to see me.
3. Mother said to me (that) she felt bad that day.
4. The students of Group 106 said to us (that) they had four exams that spring.
5. The pupil said to the teacher (that) he could do his homework after dinner.
6. The teacher said (that) he knew I worked hard and I was a good boy.
7. The teacher said to the students (that) they had 18 hours of English a week.
8. The dean said at the meeting (that) the first-year students had to work well.
9. The girl asked if she might wait for her friend there.
10. She asked if we were going to the club together.
11. The old man said to her (that) she could sing perfectly.
12. My sister said to me (that) I looked very well and she hoped I was all right.

13. The girl said to me (that) she was going to become a doctor.
14. Some of our students said to him (that) he was not right, he didn't work hard enough.
15. He said to us (that) he agreed he didn't always work systematically.
16. My uncle said to us (that) he bought several newspapers every day.
17. My guest said (that) I was an excellent cook, everything was so tasty.

**Ex. VII, p. 198**

1. went 2. have been 3. came, had, read, began 4. did ... return, returned, did ... go, could, was 5. did ... discuss 6. have seen 7. entered, saw, was standing, cutting, was cooking 8. heard, ran, saw, lying, crying, has happened, did ... hurt 9. want, do...want, haven't ... heard 10. are... going, am going, haven't had 11. saw, understood, was working, was thinking, didn't notice 12. Has ... returned, came 13. Have ... been, were, stayed, remember, liked, liked

**Ex. VIII, p. 205**

1. Why was Ann too busy to write?
2. When did Ann leave school?
3. When did she begin to prepare for her entrance exams?
4. Why did Ann make up her mind to be a teacher?
5. How many exams did she have to take?
6. Did she pass all of them with excellent marks?
7. Is she now a first-year student?
8. What University does she study at?
9. What building of the University would Ann like to show to Mary?
10. Why couldn't Ann help admiring that old building?
11. When did the first students enter the University?
12. What fact are the students of the Moscow State Teacher Training University proud of?
13. How many faculties are there at the University?

14. What well-known professors teach at the University?
15. What libraries and reading rooms are there at the University?
16. What facilities do they have for those who go in for sports?
17. What subjects does Ann take at the University?
18. Is there an English speaking club at their faculty?
19. What gives the students a good opportunity to master the language?
20. Why is Ann working hard at her pronunciation?
21. Where do the students work with cassette recorders?
22. Does it help them to find out their mistakes and to get rid of them in the shortest possible time?
23. What does Ann ask Mary to write about?
24. Whom does Ann send greetings at the end of her letter?

**Ex. IX, p. 205**

1. — 2. in, at 3. for 4. of 5. on 6. at 7. in 8. — 9. for 10. — 11. to 12. to 13. in for, at 14. with, — 15. to, in 16. of 17. of 18. from

**Ex. X a), p. 205**

1. Who left school in June? When did you leave school? What (educational establishment) did you leave in June? What did you begin to do? What did you begin to prepare for?
2. Who entered the Institute more than 100 years ago? What educational establishment did the first students enter more than 100 years ago? When did the first students enter the Institute?
3. Who gathered at my cousin's place to see the New Year in? Where did we all gather to see the New Year in? Why / On what occasion did we all gather at my cousin's place?
4. Whom was I just writing a letter (to) when the doorbell rang and my brother entered? When was I just writing a letter to my brother?

**Ex. XI, p. 205**

1. — 2. the, the 3. —, — 4. — 5. the, the, the 6. a / the 7. a, the 8. a, the 9. a, the 10. the, —, —, — 11. the, the 12. the, 13. —

**Ex. XII, p. 206**

1. I made up my mind to go for a walk as it was a pleasant evening.
2. We made up our minds to answer his question in written form.
3. He made up his mind to speak to the assistant dean about his work.
4. Our cousin made up his mind to go to the country for his holiday.
5. He made up his mind to recite his new poem to his friends.
6. He made up his mind to get an excellent mark in English.
7. He made up his mind to master two foreign languages.

**Ex. XIII, p. 206**

1. I am fond of Tchaikovsky's music.
2. The girls were fond of spending time in the open air.
3. I am fond of swimming.
4. He is fond of Byron's poetry.
5. We all are fond of Russian nature.
6. The old man was fond of this beautiful park.

**Ex. XIV, p. 206**

1. I can't help loving Repin's work, he is a great artist.
2. I couldn't help going to my sister's yesterday, it was my niece's birthday.
3. I couldn't help inviting Helen, she is one of my best friends.
4. I couldn't help entering a teachers' training institute, I love children.

5. I couldn't help telling her everything, she wanted to know all about her mother.
6. I couldn't help smiling while looking at that funny animal.

**Ex. XV, p. 207**

1. It goes without saying we read a newspaper every day.
2. It goes without saying we must work systematically if we want to know English well.
3. It goes without saying she will get an excellent mark.
4. It goes without saying his work is very interesting.
5. It goes without saying teaching is a noble profession.
6. It goes without saying he is a well-bred person.
7. It goes without saying we are eager to master the English language.

**Ex. XX, p. 208**

1. We try to take part in the discussions about new films. We take part in the public activities of our University. We take part in the work of our English club.
2. Why don't you take part in our work (in our concert, in our discussion)?
3. He goes in for sports (music, painting, languages, scientific work / research, singing, arts).
4. Those who come from other cities live in the hostel.
5. He made up his mind to enter the Moscow Teacher Training University (to become a teacher, to study hard this term).
6. I cannot help stopping when I see this nice child. I could not help entering the Teacher Training University, I like children.
7. The children are proud of their father-sailor. They are proud of their success. They all (have) passed the examinations and got excellent marks. The inhabitants of Volgograd are proud of their city. It is really a new wonderful city.

8. Don't be angry with me. It is my fault / mistake. They are angry with me because I have been late (have not answered their letter).
9. It goes without saying (that) we speak only English at / during the English lessons. It goes without saying (that) he has helped us / has given us a helping hand.
10. I can't get rid of this mistake in (my) pronunciation (of this painful / distressing thought, of this illness / disease).
11. When did you pass the last examination? — I passed the last examination on the twelfth of August. She has passed the last examination. Have you passed this examination? — Yes, I have passed the last examination and now I am free. He did not take the examination with us as he was ill. He has failed / has not passed the examination. We are taking an examination in English in January. I hope, we all are going to pass it.

**Ex. XXVI, p. 209**

1. Yes, I shall / will. I shall / will come to your party with pleasure.
2. I don't think it is.
3. Thanks a lot. I'll have no more, I must be running.
4. I am the one who ought to thank you.
5. It is. And the sky is overcast with clouds.
6. Shall we go right now?
7. But yes, I do. I was lucky to get acquainted with her when I was in the rest home.
8. Very nice of you. I hope they were glad to accept your invitation.
9. A very good idea. Our English choir is the best one in the region.
10. I thought as much.
11. Do you? I should never have thought that studying English was such an undertaking (for you).
12. I hope so. In fact I would like to go to Sochi first.



13. Shall I help you in a way? Last year I was the first prize winner at the phonetic contest, you know.
14. Well, Chemistry is not his cup of tea but he tried his best to prepare for the exam.
15. It serves her right. She was not industrious during the term and missed many classes.
16. I'd rather go there tomorrow as I am having a birthday party today.
17. No doubt, he is. Is he ready to share his experience with us?
18. All right. Let me have a look at it.
19. Just a moment. I must turn off the gas first.
20. Do, please. The baby is already awake.
21. You may take mine for a fortnight or so.
22. I don't mind. Could you open that casement, please?
23. Do you really believe that curses like chickens come home to roost?

**Ex. XXVII, p. 210**

1. I finished / left school two years ago. I have (already) finished the work and can go with you to the cinema. When I finished the work I made up my mind to go for a walk. The meeting was over and we went home.
2. My sister entered the Institute in 1982. When I entered the hall I saw (that) there were many students there.
3. The Muscovites are proud of their Hero City.
4. We can't help thinking about the coming examinations.
5. His parents left Kiev when he was ten (years old / years of age).
6. I have passed the entrance examination in English with an excellent mark. How many examinations did you pass last year? Nina has passed the examination in Physics but has not passed the one in Chemistry.
7. What mark have you got for the reproduction?
8. The boy answered well and the teacher gave him a five.
9. I know this teacher, he examined me in History last year.

10. She has good marks in all the subjects.
11. My brother likes Mathematics, Physics and Chemistry but I like Literature and Geography.
12. Last week we had a test. I got a three.
13. At the lessons / classes in Speech Practice we read, answer questions, do oral and written exercises. Do Exercise Three orally and Seven and Eight in written form / in writing.
14. Yesterday I did my homework / lessons / homework at the laboratory. I like to work with the tape recorder / cassette recorder. If you want to get rid of your mistakes, you must work more at the laboratory.
15. I want to take part in the work of this scientific society.
16. Boris has made up his mind to join our sports society, he goes in for sports.
17. Though there is a good gymnasium at our University, we often go to the stadium.
18. When did you join the drama society? — Some days ago.
19. Our English club helps us to master the language better.
20. My girlfriend has a good voice. She is a member of our choir.
21. Last week I made a report on home reading. I made many mistakes and the teacher gave me an unsatisfactory mark.

## Lesson Fifteen

### Ex. II, p. 216

1. At 10 o'clock he will be still working at the laboratory.
2. My friend will be preparing for her written test when I come.
3. Will you be waiting for me at the station at 8 o'clock in the morning?
4. Will his friend be giving a lesson at 5 o'clock?

5. My nephew will be repairing our vacuum cleaner at 7.
6. My uncle will be listening to the news when I go to bed.
7. My aunt will be knitting the whole morning.

**Ex. III, p. 216**

1. When will he begin his lectures?
2. Where will my brother go for six months?
3. Why will my sister go to the South?
4. How long will it take me to get to her house?
5. Where shall / will I be waiting for you?
6. How long will it take to build this theatre?
7. When was it snowing hard?
8. When shall / will I be able to translate this article?
9. When will he see her?
10. When shall / will I get up tomorrow?
11. How long will he stay in the country?
12. When shall / will I be able to go to the canteen?
13. When shall / will I have to repair my aunt's iron?
14. When shall / will I be having dinner?

**Ex. IV, p. 217**

1. translate
2. is
3. hurry
4. rains
5. comes
6. comes
7. leave
8. give
9. miss
10. come
11. washes
12. comes

**Ex. V, p. 217**

1. He says (that) he is sure she will come in time.
2. She says (that) she will be able to read English newspapers without a dictionary in a year.
3. They say (that) they won't go to the Institute on Sunday.
4. Mr. Sandford says (that) he will have to pay much money for the house.
5. Peter says (that) he will be waiting for me at the station.
6. Mary says (that) she will be back soon.
7. She asks me what I am going to do when I come home.

8. She says (that) she hopes she'll soon speak English as well as I do.
9. He says (that) he is sure it will rain soon.
10. They say (that) they will go for a walk if it is hot tomorrow.
11. She says (that) she is busy today but she'll be much busier tomorrow.
12. Jane says (that) she will come earlier tomorrow.
13. John says (that) he won't be able to meet them tomorrow.
14. He says (that) he will come if he is free.
15. She says (that) she'll go to the cinema in the evening if she is not very tired.
16. Mother says (that) I'll be sleepy tomorrow if I don't go to bed at once.
17. My aunt says (that) she won't be thirsty if she has some grapes.
18. My mother asks not to serve dessert before she clears the table.

**Ex. VI, p. 218**

1. You had to practice this text in the laboratory. You will have to practice this text in the laboratory.
2. You had to take your exam in English. You will have to take your exam in English.
3. She could translate this article without a dictionary. She will be able to translate this article without a dictionary.
4. They couldn't meet them at the station. They won't be able to meet them at the station.
5. The doctor had to examine this child. The doctor will have to examine this child.
6. He had to work systematically if he wanted to know French well. He will have to work systematically if he wants to know French well.
7. This child had to spend more time out in the open air. This child will have to spend more time out in the open air.

8. I couldn't recite this poem. I shan't / won't be able to recite this poem.
9. You had to take part in this work. You will have to take part in this work.
10. He couldn't join the party, he was busy. He won't be able to join the party, he'll be busy.

**Ex. V, p. 223**

come — came — come — coming  
 blow — blew — blown — blowing  
 drive — drove — driven — driving  
 fall — fell — fallen — falling  
 prefer — preferred — preferred — preferring  
 freeze — froze — frozen — freezing  
 ski — skied — skied — skiing  
 put — put — put — putting  
 sweep — swept — swept — sweeping  
 hang — hung — hung — hanging  
 show — showed — shown — showing  
 sew — sewed — sewn — sewing  
 awake — awoke — awoken — awaking  
 sleep — slept — slept — sleeping  
 build — built — built — building  
 stop — stopped — stopped — stopping  
 sit — sat — sat — sitting  
 read — read — read — reading  
 write — wrote — written — writing  
 play — played — played — playing  
 leave — left — left — leaving  
 begin — began — begun — beginning  
 become — became — become — becoming

**Ex. VI, p. 223**

dark [dɑ:k] — darker ['dɑ:kə] — the darkest [ðə 'dɑ:kɪst]  
 heavy ['hevi] — heavier ['heviə] — the heaviest [ðə 'heviɪst]  
 hard [hɑ:d] — harder ['hɑ:də] — the hardest [ðə 'hɑ:dɪst]  
 large [lɑ:ʤ] — larger ['lɑ:ʤə] — the largest [ðə 'lɑ:ʤɪst]

old [ʊld] — older ['ʊldə] / elder ['eldə] — the oldest [ðə 'ʊldɪst] / the eldest [ðə 'eldɪst]  
 severe [sɪ'viə] — severer [sɪ'viərə] — the severest [ðə sɪ'viəriːst]  
 pleasant ['plezənt] — more pleasant ['mɔː 'plezənt] — the most pleasant [ðə 'mɔːst 'plezənt]  
 bad [bæd] — worse [wɜːs] — the worst [ðə 'wɜːst]  
 good [ɡʊd] — better ['betə] — the best [ðə 'best];  
 strong [strɒŋ] — stronger ['strɒŋə] — the strongest [ðə 'strɒŋɪst]  
 weak [wiːk] — weaker ['wiːkə] — the weakest [ðə 'wiːkɪst]  
 little ['lɪtl] — less [les] — least [ðə 'liːst]  
 far [fɑː] — farther ['fɑːðə] / further ['fɜːðə] — the farthest [ðə 'fɑːðɪst] / the furthest [ðə 'fɜːðɪst]  
 near [niə] — nearer ['niərə] — the nearest [ðə 'niəriːst] / the next [ðə 'nekst]  
 late [leɪt] — later ['leɪtə] / latter ['lætə] — the latest [ðə 'leɪtɪst] / the last ['lɑːst]  
 clear [kliə] — clearer ['kliərə] — the clearest [ðə 'kliəriːst]  
 hot [hɒt] — hotter ['hɒtə] — the hottest [ðə 'hɒtɪst]  
 warm [wɔːm] — warmer ['wɔːmə] — the warmest [ðə 'wɔːmɪst]  
 beautiful ['bjʊ:tɪfʊl] — more beautiful ['mɔː 'bjʊ:tɪfʊl] — the most beautiful [ðə 'mɔːst 'bjʊ:tɪfʊl]

**Ex. XII a), p. 224**

1. Is it as chilly today as it was yesterday? It isn't as chilly today as it was yesterday.
2. Will the frost be as hard tomorrow as it is today? The frost won't be as hard tomorrow as it is today.
3. Is she as fond of frosty weather as her brother is? She isn't as fond of frosty weather as her brother is.
4. Has it stopped raining? It hasn't stopped raining.
5. Will she be working when you come? She won't be working when you come.
6. Will pressure remain high? Pressure won't remain high.

**Ex. XIII, p. 225**

1. severer / more severe
2. the most interesting
3. harder
4. the coldest
5. worse
6. the hottest
7. the most beautiful
8. the best
9. faster, the fastest
10. less, least, more

**Ex. XV, p. 226**

- A.** 1. on 2. over, on, along 3. at, on 4. across 5. over, in 6. in, at  
7. down 8. above 9. with, in
- B.** 1. above, in 2. at, in 3. to, of 4. up 5. over, up 6. in 7. at, on,  
in 8. through 9. at, for

**Ex. XVI, p. 227**

1. stops 2. is fine 3. is not severe 4. is hot 5. put on 6. comes  
7. comes 8. rains 9. comes

**Ex. XVII, p. 227**

- (a)** 1. remain 2. stay 3. remain 4. stayed 5. remained 6. stayed  
**(b)** 1. so 2. such 3. such 4. so 5. so 6. so

**Ex. XXIII, p. 228**

- A.** 1. Today the fog is not so thick as it was yesterday. / It is not so foggy today as it was yesterday. Yesterday the fog was so thick that I was afraid to go by car and preferred to walk to the theatre / to go to the theatre on foot.
2. It is unpleasant to go for a walk / to go for a stroll / to go out when the sky is overcast with clouds and it rains and buses and cars splash (the) water and mud on the passers-by.
3. What nasty / beastly weather (we are having today)! It is drizzling and the streets are so dirty.
4. The sky has got dark and the cold wind has begun blowing / to blow from the sea. But today the wind is not so strong as it was yesterday. Yesterday it was much stronger.
5. It's freezing hard. The pond will soon be frozen over and we shall be able to skate.
6. The park looks so nice / beautiful when the ground is covered with snow and the frost sparkles on the branches (of the trees).
7. I have not heard the weather forecast today and don't know if it is going to rain today. If it does not rain I am sure to go out of town / to the country.

8. The weather is getting warmer and I think fruit trees will soon be in blossom / in bloom.
  9. The corn is beginning to turn ripe / to ripen. Harvest time will soon come. Some students of our faculty will go to help the farmers to reap the corn / the harvest and put it in barns.
  10. Take the raincoat or the umbrella. The weather may change.
  11. It is very cold today. You will have to stay at home. If you go out, you will catch (a) cold again and will not be able to go to school / to attend the lessons.
  12. I think he will not ring you up until he comes back / returns to Moscow.
  13. My brother is coming tomorrow morning. I don't know if I shall / will get a telegram from him, but even if I don't get it, I shall / will go to the station to meet him.
  14. We shall / will be able to discuss our plans on Monday.
  15. You must not learn this poem by heart until you master it / its pronunciation at the laboratory.
  16. She does not know if she will finish her article today. If she finishes it and if it does not rain today, we shall / will go to the theatre.
  17. I shall / will be glad if the rain is over / it stops raining. I must hurry to the station.
  18. In an hour the first delegates will start coming / arriving.
  19. Fields and parks in England remain green even in winter.
  20. Look! There has been a good fall of snow. Tomorrow children will be tobogganning and making a snowman.
  21. How beautiful it is! Raindrops and dewdrops are shining on the leaves and (blades of) grass.
  22. I think it won't be raining too long and we shall / will be able to go to the forest and pick up / gather mushrooms and berries.
- B. 1. It is too stuffy / very close today. I fear a thunderstorm is coming.



2. Those tremendous claps of thunder awoke me at night. It was raining cats and dogs / pouring the whole night / all night (long).
3. Look! It has stopped raining. The clouds have lifted. There is a fine rainbow in the sky. I hope, the weather will be / keep fine.
4. According to the weather forecast there will be occasional rain this week.
5. It's pouring, put up the umbrella or you will get wet through.

## Ex. XXIV, p. 229

- a) неумный, неразумный, глупый; разрушать, уничтожать; веселый, радостный, живой, любящий веселую компанию, общительный; совершенно, полностью, вполне, всецело; посмеиваться, хихикать, фыркать от смеха; красивый, миловидный, привлекательный; хрупкий, непрочный, неосновательный; начинать, инициировать
- b) senseless, foolish, stupid, ridiculous; spoil, destroy, demolish, wreck; joyful, spirited, happy, cheerful, glad; wholly, fully, entirely; giggle, titter, laugh; attractive, fair, charming, comely, pretty, beautiful, handsome; weak, wobbly, frail, fragile; begin, commence, initiate
- c) tomfoolishness — idioticalness, extreme stupidity or foolishness (Webster's, p. 1124); occasional — sometimes, but not frequently or regularly (Macmillan, p. 977); happening now and then / not often (Harrap's p. 345); depression — a feeling of being extremely unhappy (Macmillan, p. 372), miserable feeling (Harrap's p. 128); to be plagued — to be annoyed all the time by doing something or by being asked for something (Macmillan, p. 1075), to be annoyed or bothered (Harrap's p. 380); set-fair day — (*of the weather*) to be likely to stay fine for some time (Courtney, p. 554), (from *set fair*, a position on a barometer dial) (Cowie, p. 495); keep on steadily — to continue, often in spite of difficulties, regularly (Courtney, p. 316), (Harrap's p. 498); a thing that is beyond me — it is too difficult for me to understand or deal with (Macmillan, p. 121)

## Lesson Sixteen

### Ex. II, p. 233

take [teɪk] — took [tu:k] — taken ['teɪkən] — taking ['teɪkɪŋ]  
 do [du:] — did [dɪd] — done [dʌn] — doing ['du:ɪŋ]  
 come [kʌm] — came [keɪm] — come [kʌm] — coming ['kʌmɪŋ]  
 read [ri:d] — read [red] — read [red] — reading ['ri:ɪŋ]  
 feel [fi:l] — felt [felt] — felt [felt] — feeling ['fi:lɪŋ]  
 say [seɪ] — said [sed] — said [sed] — saying ['seɪɪŋ]  
 see [si:] — saw [sɔ:] — seen [si:n] — seeing ['si:ɪŋ]  
 ride [raɪd] — rode [rɔd] — ridden ['rɪdn] — riding ['raɪdɪŋ]  
 go [ɡʊ] — went [went] — gone [ɡɒn] — going ['ɡʊɪŋ]  
 know [nəʊ] — knew [nju:] — known [nəʊn] — knowing ['nəʊɪŋ]  
 shine [ʃaɪn] — shone [ʃɔn] — shone [ʃɔn] — shining ['ʃaɪnɪŋ]  
 forget [fə'ɡet] — forgot [fə'ɡɒt] — forgotten [fə'ɡɒtn] — for-  
 getting [fə'ɡetɪŋ]  
 tell [tel] — told [tɔld] — told [tɔld] — telling ['telɪŋ]  
 cut [kʌt] — cut [kʌt] — cut [kʌt] — cutting ['kʌtɪŋ]  
 get [ɡet] — got [ɡɒt] — got [ɡɒt] — getting ['ɡetɪŋ]  
 make [meɪk] — made [meɪd] — made [meɪd] — making ['meɪkɪŋ]  
 run [rʌn] — ran [ræn] — run [rʌn] — running ['rʌnɪŋ]  
 fly [flaɪ] — flew [flu:] — flown [flɔn] — flying ['flaɪɪŋ]  
 choose [tʃu:z] — chose [tʃɔz] — chosen ['tʃəʊzn] — choosing  
 [tʃu:zɪŋ]  
 catch [kæʃ] — caught [kɔ:t] — caught [kɔ:t] — catching  
 ['kæʃɪŋ]  
 swim [swɪm] — swam [swæm] — swum [swʌm] — swimming  
 ['swɪmɪŋ]  
 lie [laɪ] — lay [leɪ] — lain [leɪn] — lying ['laɪɪŋ]

### Ex. III, p. 233

1. She asked me if I would be angry with her.
2. I said (that) I would be too busy the following day.
3. We said (that) we would take four exams in summer.
4. He said (that) he would show me the main building of their University, it was / is very beautiful.

5. Ann said (that) she would have a better command of the language if she read English books.
6. The students said (that) they would work hard at their pronunciation; they wanted to get rid of their mistakes.
7. They asked us when we would join their / our choir.
8. Nelly asked her if she would invite her to her birthday party.

**Ex. IV, p. 234**

1. Roger said (that) his uncle had been there more than once.
2. Alice asked me if I had spent much time there.
3. Ben asked me when I had joined their circle.
4. She said (that) their group had worked in the lab that day.
5. Bill said (that) he remembered she had been good at singing.
6. The mother asked her son why he had spent so much money on sweets.
7. Fanny asked her friend where he / she had gone during his / her vacation.

**Ex. VI, p. 234**

1. We heard / knew that all the first-year students had enjoyed the concert greatly.
2. Everybody was sure that Peter would pass all the examinations with excellent marks.
3. In his letter the son wrote to his mother that he was taking part in difficult but interesting work.
4. We learned that they had not gone out of town because of nasty / beastly weather.
5. Becky said to her mother (that) she had invited her friends to the picnic.
6. I was sure I would not be able to get an excellent mark in Geography.
7. Brother said he did not like Chemistry.

8. Ann said to Nick (that) he would have to make a report on Saturday.
9. The children said to Tom (that) the teacher had given him a good mark.
10. He learned (that) the man had formerly been a brave general.
11. We heard over the radio (that) the frost would be still harder the next day.
12. She was afraid (that) the day would be cold and rainy.
13. Harry said (that) it had not been raining at least for two days.
14. The girl said (that) her brothers had gone to ski.
15. Father said (that) he had already looked through the morning newspapers.
16. Nina's girlfriend said (that) she had managed to get tickets.

**Ex. VI a), p.240**

1. When Ben Smith came home he was dreadfully tired because he had had a lot of work and trouble that day.
2. June was smiling radiantly because she had got everything arranged and they would go to the theatre.
3. She was realizing her dream of going to the theatre.
4. Penny said she would stay indoors and watch television.
5. Ben envied his daughter because she intended to stay indoors.
6. He was a considerate husband as he felt sorry for June who got too little entertainment even at weekends.
7. The weather was unusually nasty.
8. Ben had to get off the bus as only seven people could stand in it.
9. Ben went past the theatre because he had fallen asleep in the bus.
10. The man at the door didn't let Ben in because Ben had no ticket.

11. The situation at that moment was saved by a girl behind the ticket-office window who asked Ben if he was Mr. Smith and said that his wife had left his ticket with her.
12. It was not easy for Ben to find his seat as he squeezed to it in the dark, stepping on people's feet.
13. Ben and June found it difficult to understand the plot of the play as one actor, an old man, spoke very quietly, and the other, a young man, spoke very quickly.
14. Ben decided to take a taxi on the way back because they waited long for a bus in rainy weather, they got wet through and he lost his patience.
15. The journey turned out to be rather expensive for them as after ten o'clock in the evening the fare was higher.
16. When Ben talked to his daughter about watching TV it struck him to get to know that Penny had seen the same play on TV and enjoyed it greatly.

**Ex. VII, p. 240**

of, —; to; into, at; In, —; at; in, out of, with; on; of, on;  
by, —; for

**Ex. IX, p. 241**

1. leaving 2. heard 3. high 4. listening 5. tall 6. stay 7. short,  
taller 8. low

**Ex. X, p. 241**

It is high time for him to leave.  
It is high time for them to go out of town.  
It is high time for everybody to begin the work.  
It is high time for John to return.

**Ex. XI, p. 241**

The wind was quick enough to take off the leaves from the trees.  
The secretary was polite enough to offer her a cup of coffee and a couple of sandwiches.

The pronunciation was distinct enough to reach the ears of those sitting in the farthest corner of the room.

The guest was energetic enough to make me feel uncomfortable.

The boy was clever enough to give advice to his elder brother.

### Ex. XII, p. 241

#### Model:

- a) It was such a hot day. We drank a lot.  
It was such a backbreaking task. They worked a lot.  
It was such a difficult examination. He prepared a lot.  
It was such a cunning question. I thought a lot.  
It was such a curious disease. She ate a lot.
- b) She hates such greedy young men. They get on her nerves.  
We like such shrewd pupils. They make great progress in studies.  
He preferred such experienced workers. They could cope with the task in no time.  
He dislikes such polite waitresses. They ask for enormous tips.  
I adore such industrious students. They are sure to take a postgraduate course.
- c) Don't eat such fat food. You may put on weight.  
Don't listen to such loud music. You may get deaf.  
Don't make such terrible noise. You may get into a mess.  
Don't buy such gaudy furniture. You may get tired of it.  
Don't use such exquisite perfume. You may make a vulgar impression.

### Ex. XIII, p. 242

#### Model 1:

- a) How strong the sportsman is! He has already won the contest!  
How interesting the novel is! I have already read it!  
How weak the patient is! He has already fainted!  
How tall the boy is! He has already grown out of his clothes!  
How beautiful the painting is! She has already bought it!
- b) How jolly the pupils are! They are already on the Black Sea coast!

How high the buildings are! They are already half the tower  
in height!

How weak the ponies are! They are already on their knees!

How lovely the waitresses are! They are already near our  
table!

How strong the young shoots are! They are already above the  
ground!

**Model 2:**

- a) What a lovely hostess she is! She has already arranged the  
party!

What a weak wind it is! It has already ceased!

What an interesting person she is! She has already changed  
her mind!

What a strong man he is! He has already broken the horse-  
shoe!

What a beautiful girl she is! She has already taken the first  
prize!

- b) What weak creatures they are! They are already in bed!

What interesting people they are! They are already on their  
way to the museum!

What tall oaks they are! They are already over the roof!

What jolly swimmers they are! They are already on the way  
back!

What beautiful apple trees they are! They are already in  
blossom!

**Ex. XIV, p. 242**

untidy — неопрятный, неряшливый, неаккуратный

unpleasant — неприятный, противный, отталкивающий

unselfish — неэгоистичный, бескорыстный

unable — неспособный; *поэт.* слабый, бессильный, не-  
мощный

ungreatful — неблагодарный, непризнательный

unlimited — неограниченный; безграничный, беспредель-  
ный

unnecessary — ненужный, излишний

unoriginal — неоригинальный, банальный; заимствованный

**Ex. XV, p. 242**

homeless — бездомный  
 speechless — немой; безмолвный, молчаливый  
 careless — беззаботный  
 woodless — безлесный  
 waterless — безводный  
 thoughtless — бездумный, беспечный; неосмотрительный,  
                   неразумный, неосторожный  
 sleepless — бессонный  
 restless — беспокойный, неугомонный  
 hairless — безволосый, лысый  
 toothless — беззубый

**Ex. XVI a), p. 242**

1. Вы бы предпочли кусочек хлеба или пирога?
2. Я бы предпочел пойти в кино, чем остаться дома.
3. Нам бы лучше выйти из дома в 5, чтобы не опоздать.
4. Не хотели бы вы пойти в театр? — Нет, спасибо, я бы предпочел остаться дома.
5. Вам бы лучше съесть свой завтрак, иначе вы проголодаетесь до ланча.
6. Если мы не побежим, то не успеем на автобус, поэтому нам бы лучше бежать.
7. Ваш брат хотел бы прийти? — Пожалуй, нет, я думаю.
8. Лучше бы мальчики поиграли в футбол.
9. Я бы предпочел жаркую погоду холодной.
10. Что бы вы предпочли: чай или кофе?

**Ex. XVII, p. 243**

1. How long will it take them to read / to look through the magazines? — It won't take them even half an hour. How long will it take you to finish the work? — An hour and a half or so.
2. The friends were going / intended to go out of town / to the country at the weekend.



3. I am dreadfully / greatly tired after the excursion and cannot come to your place / to come and see you today.
4. They all wanted to spend the holiday gaily / merrily.
5. Children must not watch TV every day.
6. This woman looks young. Does she always look so good?
7. He had never thought (that) he would be able to realize his dream. The old man realized how serious his condition was.
8. It is easy to kick up a row, but it is difficult to make it up.
9. Your child knows much more than you think he does.
10. They were sitting long on the bank of the river. There was nobody on the shore of the lake. It is warm now on the Black Sea coast.
11. A twelve-year-old Mary and a jolly five-year-old boy Dicky joined them.
12. It is very difficult to stay at home in such weather.
13. He was about to leave the house when it began raining / to rain.
14. I would like to be out-of-doors / in the open air now.
15. It is not difficult to settle the problem. / The problem is not difficult to settle.
16. It is the very exercise book I need. It is the very man / person I have been dreaming to meet.
17. It is very close / stuffy in the carriage. Let us go out to the platform at the next stop.

**Ex. XIX, p. 243**

1. a good deal 2. a great number of 3. plenty of 4. a great number of 5. a great many 6. a good deal of 7. a great deal 8. a great many 9. a good deal 10. A great many 11. plenty of 12. A great number of 13. A great many 14. a good deal of 15. plenty of

**Ex. XX, p. 244**

1. A, the, a, —, —; A; the, — 2. A, a; —, a; The, the, the; a, the; the, a

**Ex. XXVII, p. 245**

The weather was fine that Sunday morning. The Fyodorovs were eager to spend a few hours out-of-doors / in the open air. It did not take them long / much time to think over the plan of their rest. They all, the father, the mother and two sons Yuri and Victor, were excellent skiers. That's why they decided to take the skis and go out of town / start off as soon as possible.

They had breakfast, got everything arranged for the trip and left the house at 10 o'clock.

The streets were crowded with people. Some of them were going to museums and exhibitions, others — to visit their friends. Many young people and children were carrying skis or skates.

In five minutes the Fyodorovs got to Savyolovsky station. In an hour they were at Tourist station together with the other skiers. The frosty air was wonderfully fresh. Everything around was covered with snow.

After the trip everybody felt a bit tired, but pleased with the day (which they had) spent out of town. After dinner the brothers played chess. The mother and the father said they preferred to stay at home and watch TV. The father said (that) the Sunday TV programme promised to be interesting. They would watch a new film and listen to a Mussorgsky opera with pleasure.

But Yuri and Victor were not going to rest at home. Their friend Alexander was celebrating his birthday. Both brothers had been invited. Mother wished them to have a good time at the party. The young men said goodbye to their parents and left the house.

**Ex. XXVIII, p. 246**

1. A: She can't help admiring St. Petersburg.  
B: What did you say?  
A: I said she couldn't help admiring St. Petersburg.
2. A: They haven't got any refrigerator.  
B: What did you say?

- A: I said they hadn't got any refrigerator.
3. A: He won't be able to make a report tomorrow.  
B: What did you say?  
A: I said he wouldn't be able to make a report tomorrow.
4. A: My friend isn't a coward.  
B: What did you say?  
A: I said my friend wasn't a coward.
5. A: Mary can shoot well.  
B: What did you say?  
A: I said Mary could shoot well.
6. A: My brother hasn't had dinner yet.  
B: What did you say?  
A: I said my brother hadn't had dinner yet.
7. A: We'll clean the windows on Monday.  
B: What did you say?  
A: I said we'd clean the windows on Monday.
8. A: They've gone further along.  
B: What did you say?  
A: I said they'd gone further along.
9. A: She is having a bathe.  
B: What did you say?  
A: I said she was having a bathe.
10. A: The boy's teasing a dog.  
B: What did you say?  
A: I said the boy was teasing a dog.
11. A: They're about to dive off that raft.  
B: What did you say?  
A: I said they were about to dive off that raft.

**Ex. XXIX, p. 246**

Once in Berlin, Remarque, the author of "All Quiet on the Western Front", was talking to an American girl.

The American, speaking in German, asked Remarque why he had never visited the United States. He answered he knew only a few sentences in English.

The girl inquired what the sentences were.

Remarque named five very short everyday phrases.

The girl exclaimed that with that vocabulary he could tour her country from Main to California.

**Ex. XXXI, p. 247**

**а) Давайте отправимся на пикник**

Пикники пользуются популярностью у женщин, детей и некоторых мужчин, которые знают, как развести костер. Дети обожают пикники главным образом потому, что, как правило, на пикниках не бывает столов и, следовательно, никаких застольных манер, и потому, что у них появляется блестящая возможность поесть того, чего им обычно есть нельзя. Поскольку ланчи на пикнике почти всегда одни и те же и, следовательно, не требуют большой фантазии, женщинам не приходится напрягаться, чтобы придумывать меню.

Многое, конечно, зависит от конкретного дня. Типичная погода для пикника бывает трех видов. Либо это сумеречная погода, обещающая временами ливни по утрам, с прояснениями после полудня; либо утром солнечно и жарко с грозовыми ливнями после обеда; либо постоянная изморось на протяжении всего дня. Но поскольку большая часть ланча заготовлена заранее, то ничего больше придумывать не надо. В конце концов, между тем, чтобы съесть ланч, заготовленный за день-два до этого, или промокнуть до нитки, большого выбора нет. Площадки для пикников обычно расположены на берегу водоема на какой-либо возвышенности. Последняя из этих характеристик весьма существенна, так как ни один пикник не считается удавшимся, если детям некуда упасть или не с чего свалиться. Также водоем, естественно, предполагает наличие у вас с собою рыболовных принадлежностей. Невозможно припомнить, чтобы кто-то когда-либо поймал хоть одну рыбку во время пикника, но рыбалка всегда служит отличной причиной для того, чтобы не вертеться под ногами, когда выполняется тяжелая работа.

Ланч — это самый главный признак пикника. Жареный цыпленок популярен всегда. Затем, как правило, яйца в мешочек. И почти все остальное, что упаковано в жестянки и бумажные пакеты, сойдет для пикника. Эти упаковки очень важны, так как после поедания содержимого, их разбрасывают вокруг и тем самым помечают место стоянки. Имбирное пиво тоже следует взять с собой именно затем, чтобы вспомнить, что вы забыли открывалку дома. Как бы то ни было, всегда найдется хоть один из присутствующих, кто знает, как открыть бутылку обломком камня.

Как только еда и всяческая утварь распакованы, на повестке дня — разведение костра. Собираание хвороста для костра обеспечивает занятие для людей, которые не знают, чем бы развлечься.

После того как ланч съели, пикник идет на спад. Но всегда имеется возможность для кого-либо чуть не утонуть, или наступить на осиное гнездо, или вывихнуть лодыжку. Тем не менее, вы должны оставаться там далеко за полдень, иначе вы не почувствуете, что хорошо провели время. Чтобы усугубить ситуацию, кто-нибудь предложить спеть.

Пикники, чтобы против них ни говорили, имеют свои преимущества. По крайней мере, во многих сердцах они пробуждают мысль о правоте старой поговорки, что в гостях хорошо, а дома — лучше.

- b) picnics are popular with, children are fond of, to have an excellent opportunity, require little imagination, not to have to trouble about, much depends on, typical picnic weather, threatening with occasional showers, a steady drizzle, getting a soaking, picnic grounds, situated on a body of water, taking fishing tackles along, an excellent excuse, for getting out of the way, the most important feature of the picnic, to open a bottle on, collecting wood, getting drowned, running into a hornets' nest, twisting an ankle, have a good time, to make matters worse, have their advantages, there is no place like home

**Ex. XXXII, p. 248**

В то утро, когда мы покидали Ливерпуль, погода была замечательная, и мы собирались хорошо провести время. Капитан сказал нам, что будет тепло и спокойно всю дорогу до Нью-Йорка. Я все еще помню некоторых пассажиров. Была одна пожилая дама, которая собиралась навестить сына в Бостоне. Потом еще был человек, который собирался начать новую жизнь в Канаде. Оба они поплы ко дну вместе с кораблем. Первый и второй день были очень хорошими. Я подумал, что скоро у меня будет прекрасный солнечный загар. Затем, вечером второго дня капитан сказал нам, что погода будет немного хуже, чем ожидалось, но это долго не продлится.

На третий день погода оказалась очень ненастной. Никто из нас не имел ни малейшего представления, насколько плохой она может обернуться. К наступлению вечера погода стала в самом деле ужасной.

На четвертый день все оставались в своих каютах. Шторм, разыгравшийся к тому времени, невозможно было описать. Вдруг я почувствовал толчок.

**Lesson Seventeen****Ex. II, p. 250**

1. The light is turned on when it's dark. And the blinds are drawn.
2. The translation was finished in time. Tom said it was a splendid opportunity to have a walk.
3. The dishes were washed. None of them was broken.
4. Benny was often taken to the park. He hated to stay at home alone.
5. Some coffee had been made. The only thing they needed was sugar.
6. Has your dress been ironed yet? You must hurry up, we have little time left.

7. The word was mispronounced (by Nina). But nobody noticed it.
8. The consonant is pronounced with aspiration. Everybody must follow the rule.
9. The Present Perfect Tense is formed with the help of the auxiliary verb 'to have'. Is it difficult to understand?
10. The truth was told her. She made no comment.
11. I was promised a book. But I failed to get it in time.
12. The cake has been cooked very well. My granny is very good at cooking.
13. Chalk is used for writing on the blackboard. Tailors also make use of it.
14. My work will be finished at about seven. Let us go to the museum then.
15. The door has been opened. The key to it has been broken.
16. The coffee was brought. And we thanked the waiter.
17. I was taken to the pictures last week. The film appeared to be a bore.
18. I shall be met at the station. You may stay at home and wait till I come.
19. This work will be finished in time. And you will be able to go on holiday next week.
20. The house was built in 1980. It needs decorations now.
21. I was not invited to the birthday party because they didn't know I was in Moscow. I was too busy to inform them about my arrival.
22. The windows were not left open. Soon it became stuffy in the room.
23. The light was not turned off. And the child could not fall asleep.
24. Some friends have been invited to tea. Let us wait a bit.
25. I have been given an English book. It is *English Grammar in Use* by Raymond Murphy.
26. Has the letter been written yet? I can take it to the post-office.

**Ex. III, p. 251**

1. They have not switched off the light. You can watch them through the pane.
2. They punished the boy for something. That is why he is crying bitterly.
3. He had finished his work by 3 o'clock. When we came he was already free.
4. They wrote the dictation without mistakes. It was very easy.
5. Who wrote the article? It depicts striking facts about the life of our village.
6. She ironed and washed her dress. It was her first experience in washing.
7. They did not invite me to the party. They did not know that I was in town.
8. He did not finish the work in time. He had to stay at the laboratory two hours more.
9. They built the house last year. But nobody lives in it at present.
10. I have just sent off the letter. I hope it will be received on Tuesday.
11. She will translate the article. There is no doubt about it.
12. When will you read this book? I need it badly.
13. She cleaned and aired the room. It is no longer in a mess.
14. Have you read all these books? How long did it take you to read them?
15. Who wrote all these letters? And who will post them?
16. She has just typed the letter. You may take it to the librarian.
17. She showed me the article that her brother had translated. The style was refined.
18. They won't allow me to go there. But I am not in the mood to stay at home.
19. Everything has been told him. He has turned a deaf ear to it.



20. You must answer all the questions. There is still some time left.

**Ex. IV, p. 251**

1. This article is written by one of the most famous English journalists / pressmen.
2. The book must be read by all the students of our group.
3. Who is the book written by?
4. The article must have been translated by five o'clock.
5. He promises (that) the translation will be finished in time.
6. When I came home the table had already been laid.
7. They will be taught (the) English (language).
8. When the examination was passed the students went to the stadium.
9. When will your wall newspaper article be written? — Tomorrow.
10. The language laboratory is attended by all the students every day / daily.
11. All these books have been taken / borrowed from the library.
12. The dictation was handed in to the teacher after the bell.
13. We have been told nothing about it. / We have not been told anything about it.
14. The students of our group are always invited to the meetings of the club.
15. She was reading a letter received from her son.
16. That could not have been told by the students.
17. I thought (that) bread and butter would be bought by my sister.
18. In spring the field will be covered with green grass and flowers.
19. Will you look / check, please, if the gas and electricity have been turned / switched off.
20. The lessons had been done, the books and exercise books had been put into the bag.

21. The letters had been left on the table.
22. The boy was not allowed to swim in the river.
23. After dinner the dishes were washed up.

**Ex. I, p. 256**

arrive [ə'raɪv] — arrived [ə'raɪvd] — arrived [ə'raɪvd] — arriv-  
 ing [ə'raɪvɪŋ]  
 get [get] — got [ɡɒt] — got [ɡɒt] — getting ['getɪŋ]  
 admire [əd'maɪə] — admired [əd'maɪəd] — admired [əd'maɪəd] —  
 admiring [əd'maɪərɪŋ]  
 impress [ɪm'pres] — impressed [ɪm'prest] — impressed [ɪm'prest] —  
 impressing [ɪm'presɪŋ]  
 situate ['sɪtʃueɪt] — situated ['sɪtʃueɪtɪd] — situated ['sɪtʃueɪtɪd] —  
 situating ['sɪtʃueɪtɪŋ]  
 enjoy [ɪn'dʒɔɪ] — enjoyed [ɪn'dʒɔɪd] — enjoyed [ɪn'dʒɔɪd] — en-  
 joying [ɪn'dʒɔɪɪŋ]  
 ride [raɪd] — rode [rɒd] — ridden ['rɪdn] — riding ['raɪdɪŋ]  
 cross [krɒs] — crossed [krɒst] — crossed [krɒst] — crossing  
 ['krɒsɪŋ]  
 learn [lɜ:n] — learned [lɜ:nd] / learnt [lɜ:nt] — learned [lɜ:nd] /  
 learnt [lɜ:nt] — learning ['lɜ:nɪŋ]  
 show [ʃəʊ] — showed [ʃəʊd] — shown [ʃəʊn] — showing  
 ['ʃəʊɪŋ]  
 teach [ti:tʃ] — taught [tɔ:t] — taught [tɔ:t] — teaching ['ti:tʃɪŋ]  
 make [meɪk] — made [meɪd] — made [meɪd] — making ['meɪkɪŋ]  
 visit ['vɪzɪt] — visited ['vɪzɪtɪd] — visited ['vɪzɪtɪd] — visiting  
 ['vɪzɪtɪŋ]  
 plan [plæn] — planned [plænd] — planned [plænd] — plan-  
 ning ['plænɪŋ]  
 drive [draɪv] — drove [drɒv] — driven ['drɪvn] — driving  
 ['draɪvɪŋ]  
 build [bɪld] — built [bɪlt] — built [bɪlt] — building ['bɪldɪŋ]

**Ex. II, p. 256**

new — newer — the newest  
 long — longer — the longest  
 busy — busier — the busiest

dirty — dirtier — the dirtiest  
beautiful — more beautiful — the most beautiful  
good — better — the best  
large — larger — the largest  
big — bigger — the biggest  
splendid — more splendid — the most splendid  
narrow — narrower — the narrowest  
interesting — more interesting — the most interesting  
hospitable — more hospitable — the most hospitable  
straight — straighter — the straightest  
impressive — more impressive — the most impressive  
broad — broader — the broadest  
crooked — more crooked — the most crooked

**Ex. III, p. 256**

- a) avenues, buses, crowds, cities, views
- b) a picture, a taxi, a square, a theatre, a minute, a guide

**Ex. IX, p. 257**

1. The Wilsons arrived in Moscow last summer.
2. They came from England.
3. They came to Moscow on a visit.
4. When people come to a town for the first time they usually go to see its places of interest so that they could get a good idea of the town.
5. They wanted to see Moscow University. They wanted to see as much as possible and they went for a ride in the city.
6. Their guide took them sightseeing about the city.
7. The guide showed them a lot of places of interest, among them Moscow's straight and broad streets, the Moscow Kremlin, Red Square, Lenin Avenue, the magnificent building of Moscow University which is situated on the Vorobyev Hills.
8. They did much sightseeing, they went sightseeing every day of their stay in Moscow.
9. The Wilsons liked the centre of the Russian capital.

10. They admired the centre of the city with its theatres, cinemas, museums, monuments and wonderful multi-storeyed buildings.
11. Moscow University is situated on the Vorobyev Hills.
12. The tourists enjoyed a most beautiful view of the whole city from the Vorobyev Hills.
13. One can also enjoy a most beautiful view of the whole city from Ostankinskaya Tower.
14. Of course, I can, but I don't think I can do it in graphic detail.
15. I live in Yasenevaya Street.
16. It takes me half an hour to get to the University from my place.
17. My friend lives in the suburbs of Moscow.
18. The nearest way from here to Petrovka Street is by Metro.
19. My father usually gets home from his office by car.
20. It is not at all easy to get a taxi during rush hours.
21. If one of my friends came here for sightseeing I would advise him to see the Kremlin if he had one day, and the State Tretyakov Gallery if he had two days, and Moscow University and the Metro stations if he had a week or a fortnight.

**Ex. X, p. 258**

**Model 1:**

1. We all were surprised at his voice.
2. The teacher was surprised at the results of the exams.
3. Those who were present were surprised at his behaviour.
4. I am surprised at you.
5. We are surprised at your written test.
6. The students were surprised at the girl's speech.
7. The old people were surprised at the youth's words.

**Model 2:**

1. The speech made an impression on the listeners.
2. The play makes an impression on me each time I see it.

3. The places of interest in St. Petersburg made an impression on the tourist.
4. Petrov's speech made a great impression on us.
5. Her singing made an impression on my companions.

**Model 3:**

1. He has arrived in St. Petersburg to take part in the work of the congress.
2. He arrived at the meeting in time.
3. They arrived at the seaside at the week-end.
4. We arrived in London on the sixteenth of March.
5. We all arrived at the station to see our friends off to Minsk.
6. We arrived at Pushkino at about six o'clock.

**Ex. XI, p. 258**

- A.** 1. of, from, in 2. —, down, to 3. around, by 4. in, by 5. On, to, along; of, in, of, in, in 6. about, in 7. in, in, of 8. of, of, in, of 9. of, at 10. of, in, on, of 11. In, in, of 12. for, on 13. by, of 14. Of, in 15. on 16. To, at 17. on 18. by 19. by, of 20. across, for 21. for, at
- B.** 1. in, of; in; on, of, in, from; from; near; by, at, by; off; off, round, along, in, near; in, about

**Ex. XII, p. 260**

1. You'd better go by Metro and you'd better get off at the next stop.
2. You'd better read aloud.
3. I'd rather go and see / visit / call on Olga.
4. He'd better stay at home. He seems to have quinsy.
5. She said she'd rather go for a walk.
6. I'd rather join my fellow students.
7. We'd rather go to see the sights of the city.
8. Where would you rather go: to London or to Paris? — To London.
9. You'd better go there at once / immediately.
10. You'd better help (your) mother (to) do / tidy up the flat.
11. I'd rather buy a hedgehog for the boy.

12. You'd better pronounce everything more distinctly.
13. I'd rather not speak about it.

**Ex. XIV, p. 261**

1. I live in one of the busiest streets of our city. My girl-friend lives on the outskirts of the city.
2. There are no narrow curved / crooked streets in new cities.
3. The magnificent building of the museum panorama has been built in Khutuzov Avenue.
4. We arrived in Sochy on Sunday. The city is situated on the Black Sea coast. The gardens and parks of Sochy are magnificent. There are many big (department) stores in the centre of the city.
5. The paintings of this museum have made a great impression on me.
6. Tourists always admire the Metro in Moscow.
7. The Russian people are very hospitable.
8. I live in the house (that is) situated on the bank of the river.
9. They crossed the street and entered the house.
10. The trip around the city has pleased us greatly. / We have greatly enjoyed the trip around the city.
11. We were tired after our trip around the city.
12. Crowds of people hurried in the direction of the Metro station.
13. Take / write down my address to remember / not to forget it.
14. As soon as we arrived in Volgograd, we went to see the sights of that Hero City at once / immediately.
15. Excuse me, don't you know the way to Sokholnicky? — No, I don't, I know Moscow very badly.
16. There was no room / vacant seat for me in the taxi.
17. Let us get off at the next stop and have a walk / a stroll.
18. I go to the Institute by bus.
19. Where do you change on the way to work? — At Pushkin Square. I change there for Trolleybus Thirty-One.

20. Are you getting off at the next stop? — Yes, I am.
21. You'd better stay at home, you are not well / unwell.
22. Could you tell me what time it is now? / Could you tell me the time?
23. Excuse me, could you possibly tell me which trolleybus runs along Petrovka? — Number Sixty-Nine seems to.
24. Many underground passages have been built in Moscow for the recent years / recently / lately.

**Ex. XV, p. 261**

1. Does your brother live in one of the new districts in Kiev? What district in Kiev does your brother live in? Who lives in one of the new districts in Kiev? Your brother lives in one of the new districts in Kiev, doesn't he?
2. Has Minsk greatly changed since the war? Since what time has Minsk greatly changed? You will hardly recognize it now, won't you?
3. Is there a new cinema not far from the metro station? What is there not far from the metro station? There is a new cinema not far from the metro station, isn't there? Where is the new cinema situated?
4. What will you do in summer? What towns will you visit in summer? How many places of interest will you see? In summer you will visit a lot of towns in different parts of Russia, won't you? You will see many places of interest, won't you?
5. Did the guide want us to have the best possible impression of the city? The guide wanted us to have the best possible impression of the city, didn't he? Who wanted us to have the best possible impression of the city?
6. A lot of new houses are being built in all the towns of Russia, aren't they? How many new houses are being built in all the towns of Russia? What houses are being built in all the towns of Russia? In what country are many new houses being built?
7. Who visited you last Sunday? When did your best friend visit you? Last Sunday your best friend visited you, didn't he?

8. Who has just arrived in Moscow from the Crimea? Whose friend has just arrived in Moscow from the Crimea? In what city has just your friend arrived? Your friend has just arrived in Moscow from the Crimea, hasn't she?

**Ex. XVI, p. 262**

1. The tourists were shown many places of interest yesterday. The tourists will be shown many places of interest tomorrow. The tourists are being shown many places of interest now. The tourists were being shown many places of interest yesterday afternoon. The tourists have already been shown many places of interest. The tourists had been shown many places of interest by Sunday.
2. Moscow University on the Vorobyev Hills was greatly admired by everybody in the past. Moscow University on the Vorobyev Hills will be greatly admired by everybody in the future. Moscow University on the Vorobyev Hills is being constantly greatly admired by everybody. Moscow University on the Vorobyev Hills was being greatly admired by everybody on the opening day. Moscow University on the Vorobyev Hills has always been greatly admired by everybody. He knew that Moscow University on the Vorobyev Hills had always been greatly admired by everybody.
3. History and Art Museums were often visited by the students of our group last term. History and Art Museums will be often visited by the students of our group next year. History and Art Museums are now being visited by the students of our group. History and Art Museums were being visited by the students of our group on that day. History and Art Museums have recently been visited by the students of our group. History and Art Museums had been visited by the students of our group by that time.
4. New metro stations were built in our town last summer. New metro stations will be built in our town next year.



New metro stations are now being built in our town. New metro stations were being built in our town from April till December. New metro stations have recently been built in our town. New metro stations had been built in our town by the New Year.

5. The poem was recited in our group on Victory Day. The poem will be recited in our group in a week. The poem is being recited in our group at the moment. The poem was being recited in our group from 4 till 5 o'clock. The poem has just been recited in our group. The poem had been recited in our group by the end of the lesson.

#### Ex. XVII, p. 262

- a)
  1. Olga suggested that we should study English together.
  2. Mary suggested that I should buy the dictionary.
  3. John suggested going to the park by metro.
  4. Our hostess offered me another piece of cake.
  5. My friend suggested that we should rest for a while.
  6. Mother offered me another cup of tea.
  7. One of the students suggested visiting Mary.
  8. The monitor of the group suggested arranging some excursions during the winter holiday.
- b)
  1. The guide suggested that the tourists should go to Sergiyev Posad.
  2. Can I offer you another cup of coffee?
  3. He offered me a ticket to the theatre.
  4. Nina suggested that her friend and she should spend the holidays together in the country.
  5. The monitor of the group suggested that the students should go on / make an excursion on Sunday.
  6. As it was a long way to go to the station, they suggested that we should take a taxi.
  7. My friend suggested our going to the theatre together.
  8. I know (that) he has offered them his help.
  9. I suggested that she should put off the trip for a week.
  10. Olga suggested walking / going on foot to the Metro station.

**Ex. XVIII, p. 263**

1. Every year thousands of people visit the Tretyakov Gallery.
2. The Moscow Kremlin impressed them greatly.
3. His answer at the examination pleasantly surprised us.
4. They told us to wait outside.
5. A passer-by showed us the nearest way to the Bolshoi theatre.
6. She promised a new dress to the girl.
7. He asked me to come at 5 o'clock.
8. They left the child at home.
9. They took us on a ride around the city.
10. We invite you to dinner tomorrow.

**Ex. XIX, p. 263**

Moscow, the Hero City, is the capital of the Russian Federation. It is the biggest political and cultural centre of the country and the largest city of Russia, one of the biggest cities of the world with the population of more than eight million people.

Moscow takes the first place among the capitals of the world according to the number of educational institutions and students. In the city there are more than one hundred museums and exhibition halls, dozens of theatres, a great number of clubs, cinemas, stadiums and other sports facilities. In 1980 Moscow was the capital of the World Olympic Games and had prepared very well for the meeting of the best sportsmen of the world and numerous foreign guests. There are many historical and architectural monuments in Moscow. The city has greatly changed for the recent decades. In those places where there were winding narrow streets and small wooden houses before / formerly / previously / in the past, there are now broad avenues with beautiful high / many-storeyed / multistorey modern buildings. Moscow is increasing / gaining in scope and growing prettier / better-looking every day, new houses, streets, squares, avenues, public gardens are constantly

growing in number. The quantity of new Metro lines is increasing. Moscow is enlarging in all the directions. Everybody who arrives in Moscow is surprised / astonished at the immense construction that takes place / is in progress in all the districts of the capital.

**Ex. XX, p. 263**

1. —, the, a, — 2. —, a, the 3. the, a 4. a, the 5. the, the, the, the, a, — 6. the, the 7. a, the, a, the, the, a, the 8. the 9. —, a 10. a, the 11. the, the, —

## Lesson Eighteen

**Ex. II, p. 268**

buy [baɪ] — bought [bɔ:t] — bought [bɔ:t] — buying ['baɪnɪŋ]  
 make [meɪk] — made [meɪd] — made [meɪd] — making ['meɪkɪŋ]  
 become [br'kʌm] — became [br'keɪm] — become [br'kʌm] — be-  
 coming [br'kʌmɪŋ]  
 show [ʃəʊ] — showed [ʃəʊd] — shown [ʃəʊn] — showing  
 ['ʃəʊɪŋ]  
 try [traɪ] — tried [traɪd] — tried [traɪd] — trying ['traɪnɪŋ]  
 put [pʊt] — put [pʊt] — put [pʊt] — putting ['pʊtɪŋ]  
 wear [weə] — wore [wɔ:] — worn [wɔ:n] — wearing ['weərɪŋ]  
 fit [fɪt] — fitted ['fɪtɪd] — fitted ['fɪtɪd] — fitting ['fɪtɪŋ]  
 cost [kɒst] — cost [kɒst] — cost [kɒst] — costing ['kɒstɪŋ]  
 get [get] — got [ɡɒt] — got [ɡɒt] — getting ['ɡetɪŋ]  
 forget [fə'get] — forgot [fə'ɡɒt] — forgotten [fə'ɡɒtn] — for-  
 getting [fə'ɡetɪŋ]  
 write [raɪt] — wrote [rɒt] — written ['rɪtn] — writing ['raɪtɪŋ]  
 run [rʌn] — ran [ræn] — run [rʌn] — running ['rʌnɪŋ]  
 go [ɡəʊ] — went [went] — gone [ɡɒn] — going ['ɡəʊɪŋ]

**Ex. III a), p. 268**

1. I watched the sun rising.
2. I heard him singing an English song.

3. We noticed a man cleaning his shoes.
4. He saw two girls dancing on the stage.
5. She watched the children running about and playing in the garden.
6. I saw her every morning arranging her hair carefully.
7. Every night we saw our neighbour listening to the news.
8. John heard his daughter talking loudly.
9. We saw Roger crossing the square.
10. They heard their father playing the piano every night.

**Ex. IV a), p. 269**

1. I saw Nick come.
2. I saw George going along the street.
3. Every morning Madge saw her neighbour opening the window.
4. We made the brother read his poem.
5. My friends made me sing yesterday.
6. Nobody can make me do it.
7. We saw their parents speaking.
8. We saw the children playing.
9. She saw Nina trying a / the hat.
10. Alice saw her sister take the book.
11. He saw his pupils standing near the school.
12. Tom saw her leave the room.
13. Mother saw her children sitting and doing their homework / hometask.
14. She saw Roger sitting on the sofa.
15. Nick saw Ann writing something.
16. I want you to understand me.
17. I want you to buy this dress.
18. I don't want you to go early.
19. We expect them to come soon.
20. The teacher noticed his pupils speaking.

**Ex. V, p. 269**

1. It was the guide who (that) showed them many places of interest.

2. It was Mrs. Hilton who (that) told the children to go to bed.
3. It is Lizzie who (that) does not want to eat her porridge.
4. It is Jim who (that) is eager to ride a pony.
5. It is Alice who (that) is cutting some sandwiches.
6. It is James who (that) says the frost is severe.
7. It was Alice and Roger who (that) swam further along.
8. It was the conductor who (that) told me where to get out.
9. It was the students who (that) began a lovely talk with an English correspondent.
10. It was Robert and Nora who (that) noticed a nasty-looking cloud.
11. It was my friends who (that) helped me to catch up with the group.

**Ex. VIII, p. 275**

1. Did John see his brother go to the fruit-shop? — John did not see his brother go to the fruit-shop.
2. Did everybody expect you to give this information? — Nobody expected you to give this information.
3. Did they want him to take his parents' advice? — They did not want him to take his parents' advice.
4. Did you see Peter buy rolls at the baker's? — You did not see Peter buy rolls at the baker's.
5. Have you made Michael tell the news? — You have not made Michael tell the news.
6. Does Helen want you to wear this cardigan? — Helen does not want you to wear this cardigan.
7. Do you want me to clean my shoes? — You do not want me to clean my shoes.

**Ex. X, p. 276**

- A.** 1. — 2. of, of 3. — 4. to, on 5. to, at 6. on 7. with 8. up 9. in, —
- B.** 1. out of, at 2. —, of 3. of, of 4. for, for, at 5. for, out 6. in, — 7. at 8. in, for, of

**Ex. XI, p. 276**

1. I wonder what shop you bought this hat at.
2. Tell me what colour scarf you would like to buy to match your new coat.
3. I'd like to know if those gloves are old or new.
4. I wonder how old your father is.
5. Tell me if Ann does shopping every day.
6. I'd like to know when you will go to the State Department Store.
7. I wonder if any new films were on last week.
8. Tell me how much this material is.
9. I'd like to know if anything has gone wrong with the iron.
10. I wonder why you didn't come to the dining hall yesterday.
11. Tell me if it is snowing hard.
12. I'd like to know if John has given you good advice.
13. I wonder why it is so stuffy in the room.
14. Tell me when they got everything arranged.
15. I'd like to know if you have managed to knit a pullover for your father.
16. I wonder when you are going to the dairy.
17. Tell me when he was made to write this letter.

**Ex. XII, p. 277**

1. wait 2. (has) expected 3. Wait 4. expect 5. expected
6. wait 7. expected 8. expected 9. were waiting 10. expected
11. expected

**Ex. XIV, p. 277**

- A.**
1. What size gloves (shoes, coat) do you wear?
  2. This dress suits you. This hat suits you. Don't try on this dress. The colour doesn't suit you. Does the blouse suit me?
  3. I want to buy shoes to match my new costume.
  4. This costume fits me badly. This dress fits you perfectly / like a glove. The dress fits Irene like a glove.

5. These gloves do not go with your costume. These shoes do not match your smart dress. This bow does not match your purple / mauve blouse.
  6. This blouse is loose on you. This costume is loose on you. This dress is tight on me. These shoes are tight on me. This coat is tight on you.
  7. These shoes are very beautiful. Try them on. The coat is very elegant / smart. Try it on.
  8. The coat is too expensive for me. The umbrella is not very expensive.
  9. I need (a pair of) cheap walking shoes (to go out). I prefer to wear cheap things.
  10. He is clever to my mind. It is not interesting to my mind. It is necessary to wait for him to my mind.
- B.**
1. We have run out of meat. We have run out of onions. We have run out of potatoes.
  2. I must go to the grocer's (the baker's, the greengrocer's, the fishmonger's, the confectionery, the dairy, the fruit-shop).
  3. It was Nina who helped us. It was mother who washed up all the dishes. It was Nick who was our guide.
  4. It's my turn to read. It's our turn to go shopping. It's her turn to wash up.
  5. Let Pete buy some onions. Let Ann buy a head of cabbage. Let Nick buy (some) cucumbers.
  6. Don't wait for him, he won't come. Who is waiting for me? — Roger is. Will you wait for us at the station, near the booking-office, please?

**Ex. XVIII, p. 278**

The, a; the, the, a, —; the, a; the, the; the, a, the, the, the; the; the, a, a, the; the; a; the

**Ex. XIX, p. 279**

- A.**
1. When Irene came up to the fitting room, she saw her girlfriend trying on a smart dress.

2. Did you hear Oleg read the text? He read it very well. Now it is your turn to record your reading.
  3. Don't advise her to buy this blouse. It does not suit her.
  4. Let Lena buy (some) potatoes, onions and tomatoes.
  5. Do you want her to buy these expensive shoes? — Yes, I do. They are so beautiful, aren't they?
  6. Mother wants Nina to go to the baker's.
  7. I met my girlfriend a few days ago / the other day. She was going out of the Moscow Central Shop.
  8. Nina was not sleeping and heard her sister come into the room. She felt Ann touch / touching her hand.
  9. Make the child take away his things / put his things in order / in the right place.
  10. Nobody can make him follow your advice.
- B.**
1. I bought a pair of suede gloves at / in the department store yesterday. They are tight on my hands. If you like, I can give them to you. — Thank you. I will take them with pleasure if they are my / the right size. — The size is six and a half. — What a luck! It is just my size. How much are they? / What is the price of them? / What do they cost? — Eight roubles. — Here is the money, please.
  2. I have got a scholarship and I will have to do some shopping. I must buy stockings, socks and a red belt made of leather for my new dress.
  3. In summer I prefer to wear dresses made of cotton. It is not so hot to have them on as those made of silk.
  4. The costume suits you very much but the jacket is too long to my mind.
  5. Dresses are not sold in the shop. Suits for men only, trousers, coats and shirts are sold here.
  6. Will you help me to choose a pair of shoes? — Try on those brown (ones). It seems to me (that) they will match your green costume.
  7. Will you follow my advice, please, and don't take this coat. It is out of fashion already. That grey one is much better. I am sure it will fit you perfectly / like a glove. Go to the fitting room. This way, please. — Oh, the coat is really



wonderful! What does it cost? / How much is it? / What is the price of it? — Eight hundred and twenty roubles. Shall I give you the bill? — Yes, please. — Thank you ever so much. / I am very grateful to you.

8. We have run out of sugar and butter. On the way from your work remember / don't forget to drop at the grocer's and buy all the necessary things.
9. We have hardly any bread (in the house). Drop at the baker's and buy a long loaf and two buns.
10. It's necessary to / We must buy some sausage, cheese, a tin of sprats, vegetables for salad, sweets and cakes.
11. Nina will have to go to the greengrocer's and buy some cabbages and carrots.
12. Robert was made to go to the provision shop.

## Lesson Nineteen

### Ex. I, p. 285

1. Go on reading.
2. He stopped writing.
3. He couldn't help laughing.
4. We all enjoyed swimming.
5. Have you finished smoking?
6. I don't mind walking.
7. Her cousin is fond of knitting.
8. The child is rather good at painting.
9. She goes in for driving.
10. The poem is worth reciting.
11. The boy doesn't read a sentence without gasping.
12. You won't go there without limping.

### Ex. II, p. 285

1. Stop talking (laughing, smoking, writing, quarrelling).
2. The mother ordered the children to finish playing (reading, knitting, sewing, ironing).

3. Go on singing (working at / on this text, translating this article, writing, studying this problem).
4. Do you mind (my) opening the window (our meeting / gathering together on Saturday, going there together, repeating this exercise)?
5. I am fond of drawing (playing tennis, singing in chorus, reading aloud).
6. We have enjoyed her singing (swimming, talking to him, skiing in the woods / forest).
7. I couldn't help agreeing with him (waiting for her, answering his question).
8. The play is worth seeing (the museum is worth visiting, these exercises are worth doing orally).
9. He left the room without saying a word (without looking at anybody, without taking anything with him, without saying goodbye).
10. Her daughters go in for knitting (skating, dancing).

**Ex. VI, p. 291**

1. She looked eager and her dark eyes sparkled with excitement.
2. Their seats were in the pit.
3. The curtain rose upon a scene of eighteenth-century Paris at the time of the French Revolution.
4. It was a melodrama full of hopeless love and heroic self-sacrifice, a play after Dickens's novel "A Tale of Two Cities".
5. She was greatly impressed by pale, dark Carton and delicate, charming Lucie Manette, the girl he loved.
6. Robert said about the leading actress that in real life she was Martin Harvey's wife, that she might be about forty-five, and that blonde hair was a wig.
7. Jean couldn't keep her tears and they fell upon the back of Robert's hand like raindrops in spring.
8. Miss Jean Law was too overcome to join in such a banal applause, her feelings were too deep for words.

9. When at last the play came to its end there was a storm of applause and many curtain calls for Miss de Silva and Martin Harvey.
10. It was the first time she had used his Christian name.

**Ex. VIII, p. 292**

- a) 1. raised 2. risen 3. rose 4. raised 5. rose 6. raise 7. rise 8. raise
- b) 1. scene 2. stage 3. scenes 4. stage 5. scene 6. stage

**Ex. IX, p. 292**

1. excited 2. accepted 3. acts, scenes 4. refused 5. curtain, scenery, applaud 6. stage, excited 7. seats, box, stage, opera glasses 8. impression 9. support 10. arrange 11. actor, leading 12. expensive, cheap 13. doubt

**Ex. X, p. 292**

1. — 2. by 3. to, for 4. — 5. of 6. for 7. On, to 8. in, in, in, in 9. in 10. after 11. for 12. in, with, at 13. to, 14. about 15. down, of

**Ex. XI, p. 293**

—, the, —, the; a, an; —, —, —, —, —, —;  
 the, the, the, the; the, —, the; the; —, —, —;  
 the, a, —; —; the, —, —; the; the, the, the, the, the; the,  
 the, the

**Ex. XII, p. 293****Model 1:**

1. We enjoy playing chess.
2. My eldest sister enjoys singing folk songs.
3. They enjoy skiing in the forest on a sunny frosty day.
4. The children enjoy bathing and splashing the water all around.
5. They also enjoy lying in the sun.

**Model 2:**

1. Our seats were far from the stage and we could hardly see what was going on.
2. The scene was touching and Jean could hardly hide her tears.
3. It was very noisy in the hall and we could hardly hear the speaker well.
4. Her lips trembled and she could hardly speak.
5. The news is so exciting and I can hardly believe it.
6. The child is so active and he can hardly sit still for a minute.
7. Bill was extremely tired and he could hardly rise to his feet.
8. His hand was shaking and he could hardly open the door at once.
9. The patient is very weak and can hardly raise his hand.

**Ex. XIII, p. 294**

1. expects 2. is 3. knows 4. goes 5. is 6. are 7. travels 8. are excited 9. is 10. is

**Ex. XIV, p. 294**

1. Neither my niece nor her husband visits us.
2. Neither his friends nor his relatives / relations can help him.
3. Neither we nor students of Group 104 (One Hundred and Four) were late for the lecture.
4. Neither French nor German is spread as widely as English.
5. Neither rains nor frosts stop real travellers.
6. There were neither stars nor the moon in the sky.
7. Neither the students nor the monitor of the group has brought the earphones / headphones.
8. Neither you nor Ann is to be blamed for that.
9. Neither he nor his friends are going to do it.
10. Neither William nor his brother has read the book up to the end.

11. Neither I nor my neighbours know this man.

12. Neither my friends nor I play cards.

**Ex. XVII, p. 295**

1. Robert suggested their meeting at the theatre.
2. Ann suggested that we should buy tickets for the performance.
3. She suggested buying a programme at the entrance to the theatre.
4. Mother suggested that we should invite Lisa for the weekend.
5. He suggested that we should not touch on / upon this question.
6. The stage manager suggested that the leading part should be given to the best actress.
7. Ann suggested going to the refreshment room during the interval.
8. I suggest sending the telegram at once / immediately.
9. Peter suggested calling for Ann earlier. It always takes her so long / much time to get ready.
10. I wonder who (has) suggested going out of town in such nasty / beastly / abominable / unpleasant weather.

**Ex. XVIII, p. 296**

1. yet 2. else 3. other 4. else 5. more 6. else 7. still 8. another
9. other 10. another 11. else 12. still 13. more 14. another
15. other

**Ex. XIX, p. 296**

1. Where else can I see the play?
2. We have made up our minds to organize some more parties in English / in the English language.
3. I should / would like another cup of coffee.
4. I am afraid he is still sleeping.
5. We were afraid to be late but the performance had not begun yet.

6. I need one more book on history of the theatre.
7. How many rehearsals are going to be / take place this week?
8. In a month there will be one more first night / first performance / premiere at this theatre.
9. What other actors play in the performance?
10. It hasn't stopped raining yet, but it has got warmer.
11. Have you been working at / on the report yet? — Yes. I have not collected / gathered all the necessary material yet.
12. We need three more tickets for the performance.
13. Who else did you meet at the theatre?

**Ex. XXIII, p. 297**

- A.**
1. I invited Ann to the party but she refused to come.
  2. I wonder if he will accept our invitation or refuse it.
  3. The doctor is not receiving.
  4. I hope (that) you will support our plan.
  5. Robert was so excited that he could hardly speak.
  6. Could you (possibly) tell me what the matter is? Why are you so excited?
  7. When the curtain rose, the audience burst into applause (began to applaud).
  8. On hearing / having heard the steps she raised her hand.
  9. I liked very much the final scene in the opera "The Life for the Tsar".
  10. Robert felt Jean touch his hand.
  11. The story was so moving that the girl could not keep her tears.
  12. Alison's singing made a great impression on Robert.
  13. We were sitting in the dress circle and saw the stage quite well / had a perfect view of the stage.
- B.**
1. The actress who played the leading part was very pretty / nice.
  2. I like the way the ballet "Swan Lake" has been staged at the theatre named after Stanislavsky.

3. The film was very good and I enjoyed it greatly / very much.
4. Call for me when you go to the skating rink.
5. In summer they often called on us / looked in at our's.
6. On the way home I must call on / drop in the library.
7. The scenery in the opera is merely splendid / magnificent.
8. I couldn't buy tickets for the performance beforehand but I managed to get good seats in the box-office.
9. I'd better go to the conservatoire today, there are works of my favourite composers on the programme.
10. We enjoyed the party very much, it was arranged / organized well.
11. What did you do during the interval? — We went to the refreshment room.
12. When you come to the theatre, you leave your coat in the cloakroom. There you can also take opera glasses and a programme (as well).
13. The best seats at the theatre are those in the stalls and in the dress circle, these are the most expensive seats. The seats in the balcony and in the gallery are worse and cheaper.
14. The performance was a great success / hit with the public and there were many curtain calls for the actors.

**Ex. XXIV, p. 298**

Gilda said (that) she had gone to a very good concert at the Festival Hall a month before. She asked Mrs. Green if she knew that they called that hall "a concert hall".

Mrs. Green said she knew that.

Gilda remarked that she had seen that name ("a music hall") several times and (had) heard it used in broadcasts too.

In Mrs. Green's opinion a music hall was something very different from a concert hall. Mrs. Green said if one wanted to hear a symphony orchestra playing good music, one went to a concert hall as a music hall was / is more like a theatre:

the seats were / are arranged like those in a theatre, there was / is a stage with curtains like in the theatre, there was / is scenery on the stage. That was / is why they often used / use the name "Variety Theatre".

Gilda inquired what she would have seen if she had gone to a music hall.

Mrs. Green answered that there would have been popular music and singing and dancing. There would have been performances by acrobats and jugglers. There might even have been performing animals.

To Gilda's mind music halls were / are currently not so popular. People preferred films and radio and television kept people at home more.

Mrs. Green agreed with Gilda saying that the most popular singers and comedians were / are seen and heard by millions of viewers and listeners in their own homes.

## Lesson Twenty

### Ex. II, p. 304

1. Has he been working at his report since 10 o'clock? He hasn't been working at his report since 10 o'clock.
2. Have they been writing their test for nearly two hours already? They haven't been writing their test for nearly two hours yet.
3. Has she been waiting long? She hasn't been waiting long.
4. Has his daughter been playing the piano since the morning? His daughter hasn't been playing the piano since the morning.
5. Have they been discussing this problem for rather a long time? They haven't been discussing this problem for rather a long time.
6. Has the child been sleeping too long? The child hasn't been sleeping too long.



7. Have Ann and Roger been quarrelling for fifteen minutes? Ann and Roger haven't been quarrelling for fifteen minutes.
8. Has she been dreaming of becoming an actress all her life? She hasn't been dreaming of becoming an actress all her life.
9. Have I been doing my lessons since 4 o'clock? I haven't been doing my lessons since 4 o'clock.

**Ex. III, p. 304**

1. How long have you been waiting for me?
2. I have known her since my childhood.
3. He has been thinking about it for three days.
4. They have always preferred theatre to TV.
5. How long has she been studying music? — Oh, she has been studying music since her early childhood.
6. Since she was a little girl she has been trying not to take things seriously.
7. The students have been writing their test for two hours already.
8. She has lived in that house round the corner about thirty years.
9. You have been playing too long. It's high time to do your lessons.
10. She has been ill for more than two weeks. I have been missing her terribly.

**Ex. IV, p. 304**

1. I have already been waiting for you for twenty minutes.
2. The scientists have been working at this problem for many years.
3. Jean has been dreaming of going somewhere to the East all her life.
4. I have been translating the article since the very morning.
5. She has been sleeping very long already. It's time to awake her.

6. Anna and Roger have been quarrelling since the very morning.
7. We have been living in this hamlet for the whole week.
8. You have been discussing this question (for) too long.
9. Have you been living here for a long time?
10. Has he really been studying (for) so long?
11. Have you already packed the things? The taxi has already been waiting for us for ten minutes.
12. He has always been interested in Physics. He is working at a new problem now. He has already been working at it for two months.
13. N. writes very good novels. Not long ago he finished a novel and now he is writing a new one. He has been writing it for more than a month and says he is writing it with pleasure.
14. We have been here since the beginning of the month, but the weather has been keeping nasty all the time.
15. It has been raining since the very morning.

**Ex. V, p. 310**

- a) toothless, hopeless, careless, sleepless, cloudless, pitiless, voiceless, homeless, thoughtless, restless, harmless, penniless
- b) dangerous, famous, nervous, courageous, industrious

**Ex. VI, p. 311**

1. George Meadows was a man of fifty and his wife, Mrs. George, was a year or two younger. They were both fine people in the prime of life. Their three daughters were lovely and their two sons were handsome and strong. They had no notions about being gentlemen and ladies; they knew their place, were happy and deserved their happiness, as they were merry, industrious and kindly.
2. The master of the house was not George, but his mother, who was twice the man her son was, as they said in the village.

3. The story amused the author because it was like an old ballad.
4. The previous day the Meadows received a letter that informed them of Uncle George's coming.
5. Captain Meadows was an old man with a wrinkled yellow face. He was very thin and his skin hung on his bones like an old suit too large for him.
6. Captain Meadows told them a lot of interesting stories about his adventures and about many things he had seen and done.
7. That was a man who had made a success of his life, because he had enjoyed it.
8. He boasted that he was happy to be back in his old home that he would live for another twenty years.
9. Mrs. Meadows said that he had always been a harum-scarum fellow.
10. She said she was glad he had come back.

**Ex. XII, p. 312**

1. industrious 2. merry / jolly 3. merry, kindly / good-natured 4. deserve 5. wrinkled, shrewd 6. marry, marriage 7. extremely / remarkably / extraordinarily 8. surprised, amused 9. introduce 10. acquaint 11. deserved 12. boasted 13. alive, died 14. admiring

**Ex. XIII, p. 313**

1. to introduce 2. introduced, to get acquainted 3. acquainted 4. introduced 5. acquainted 6. introduce, acquainted 7. to get acquainted 8. meet 9. met 10. met

**Ex. XIV, p. 313**

1. —, — 2. to 3. with 4. to, to 5. of 6. about / on, in 7. at 8. to, — 9. — 10. —, of 11. To, at 12. of 13. like 14. like

**Ex. XV, p. 314**

1. — 2. a, the 3. —, —, a 4. — 5. a 6. — 7. — 8. — 9. the 10. — 11. — 12. — 13. The, — 14. a, a 15. a, a, —, —, a, —

**Ex. XVI, p. 314**

- A.**
1. They were laughing so merrily that I could not help laughing / bursting into laughter / breaking into a laugh too.
  2. The Russian people are talented and industrious / hard-working.
  3. Mr. Dick was very kindly / good-natured / kind-hearted. He was kind to Davy and the boy loved this funny and merry man.
  4. Though Mr. Burton looked very good-natured, he was a cruel man in fact.
  5. I think the boy does not deserve punishment.
  6. When he smiled there were kind wrinkles in the corners of his hazel eyes.
  7. Miss Betsy was a shrewd / acute woman.
  8. When his mother and brother died, Davy decided / made up his mind to find his aunt.
  9. Oliver's parents died and he was very lonely.
  10. His strange behaviour surprised / astonished us.
  11. It was a wonderful piece of news and Jean could not help informing Robert of it.
  12. The girl was very / extremely / wonderfully / astonishingly clever for her age.
  13. Irene's beauty was wonderful and people could not help admiring her.
  14. To our surprise he was at home / he was in.
  15. We informed him that we would have a meeting three days later.
- B.**
1. Her long curly hair was of nice / beautiful chestnut colour.
  2. The funny looks / appearance of the child amused the old lady / woman.
  3. The boy amused us telling funny stories.
  4. He introduced me to his wife. I had dreamed of getting acquainted with her for a long time.
  5. Mr. Hill acquainted Eric with his new work.
  6. He introduced us to his parents (who) we had not been acquainted with yet.

7. Miss Emily did not know who(m) to marry: to Tom or to George.
8. Michael married Fleur though she did not love him.
9. The young people married two years ago and they are very happy. They deserve their happiness.
10. Though Soames realised that his marriage was not a success he did not want to give up / abandon Irene.
11. As every boy Tom Sawyer liked to boast.
12. We could not help admiring the magnificent performance of the young actor in the play "Thunderstorm".
13. Mr. Pickwick was a short fat kind-hearted man.
14. Florence's large dark eyes with dark curving eyelashes, fair hair and wonderful skin made her extremely beautiful.
15. She is not pretty, but she is very attractive. And her hands are shapely.
16. The girl is chubby, she has a plump face, a turned-up nose, blue eyes, pencilled brows, long eyelashes and red curly hair. She has a very fair skin and a wonderful complexion. She is already charming now and in time / in due course she will be beautiful.
17. Jane was not beautiful but she had wonderful eyes and a slim / slender figure.
18. Miss Betsy was a tall thin / spare woman with straight dark hair, a pale complexion and dark piercing / searching eyes.

#### Ex. XXI, p. 316

В четверг две библиотекариши, Памела Крим и Виолетта Мид, должны были работать в библиотеке Бенгама до девяти часов вечера. Девушки были не прочь поработать до поздна: в их маленьком городке почти не было развлечений для двух незамужних молодых особ. Вот почему, когда инспектор местной полиции Эллис предложил давать уроки дзюдо всем, кто хотел этим заняться, Памела записалась первой. Она начала изучать дзюдо точно так, как делала все остальные дела: старательно и с огромным

интересом. Она всегда старалась изо всех сил, чтобы достичь результата. Она была маленького роста, но в даюдо это не имеет значения. Она была здоровой, сильной и храброй. Нельзя сказать, что она была красавицей, но на нее приятно было смотреть, и не удивительно, что инспектор Тимоти Эллис влюбился в свою лучшую ученицу. Вскоре они собирались пожениться.

В тот вечер Тим должен был зайти за ней в девять часов, чтобы пообедать вместе в ресторане. Уже было половина девятого, и Памела разносила книги по полкам, в то время как Виолетта обслуживала оставшихся читателей.

Когда Памела проходила мимо окон около запасной двери, она заметила, что шторка была поднята. Она попыталась опустить ее, но та постоянно откатывалась вверх и при этом сильно шумела. Наконец Памеле каким-то образом удалось ее закрепить внизу, и она пошла к следующему проходу. К своему величайшему изумлению, она увидела там двух мужчин. «Извините, господа, — сказала она, — но читателям не разрешается находиться в этой части библиотеки». «Извините, мисс, — сказал тот, кто был меньше ростом и с уродливым лицом и удивлен не меньше, чем Памела, — мы этого не знали». Другой мужчина, гораздо крупнее первого, стоял спиной к Памеле, прислонившись к полкам. Первый сказал: «Боюсь, что мой друг чувствует себя довольно плохо. Ему нужно немного свежего воздуха. Не могли бы вы помочь мне вывести его на улицу, мисс?» «Сочувствую», — сказала Памела и обхватила рукой увальня, который был очень тяжелым. Тот мужчина, который был поменьше, взял своего друга за другую руку, и все трое двинулись к запасной двери. Вдруг Памела в ужасе остановилась. Она заметила кровь на пиджаке мужчины. Посмотрев на него пристальнее, она увидела, что тот мертв. Она моментально все поняла. «Вы ... убили его ... здесь, в нашей библиотеке!» — «Разве ты не отчаянно привлекательная дамочка? — сердито прошипел коротыш. — Давай, помогай мне и не привле-

кай внимание, а то с тобой будет то же, что и с Блэки». Памела притихла. Они были уже перед окном, когда внезапно Памелу осенило. Тот новый прием, которому научил ее Том, может быть, он сработает? Она не должна упустить этот шанс. Убийца был очень опасен, и еще один труп, которым вполне могла стать она, не лишит его сна. Ох, если бы только прием сработал!

Ее рука коснулась оконной шторы, та с громким шумом полетела вверх. Мужчина, сильно удивившись этому, уронил руку Блэки, и Памела отпустила другую руку. Тяжелое тело упало на пол. Убийца выхватил нож и бросился на Памелу, которая была готова к его нападению.

Когда из библиотеки испуганные люди прибежали к запасному выходу, они увидели двух лежащих на полу мужчин и побледневшую Памелу над потерявшим сознание убийцей...

#### Ех. XXV, р. 318

а)

#### Ссора любящих сердец

Сцена: Дома у Дафни.

#### *Часть первая*

#### *Звонит телефон*

Да ф н и (*поднимая трубку*): Привет! Это ты, Джеймс?

Р о б е р т: Привет! Это ты, Дафни?

Д: Да, Джеймс, я думала, позвонишь ты или нет сегодня вечером.

Р: Послушай, Дафни, это Роберт, а не Джеймс.

Д: О, это ты, Роберт! Извини. Я ждала звонка от кое-кого еще.

Р: Я пытаюсь дозвониться до тебя с двух часов.

Д: Неужели? Меня не было дома. Я пришла только пол-часа назад.

Р: Где ты была?

Д: Я играла в теннис в клубе.

Р: Ты же говорила, что не собираешься играть в теннис сегодня.

Д: Да, я знаю. Но Мэдж попросила меня пойти и составить компанию четверке.

Р: Ну, это уж слишком!

- b) 1. **I was wondering** (the Past Continuous is used to denote the continuous action in the past) **whether you'd call this evening** (the Future-Indefinite-in-the Past is used to denote the future action from the point of view of the past).
2. **I was expecting a call ...** (the Past Continuous is used to denote the continuous action in the past).
3. **I've been trying to get you ...** (the Present Perfect Continuous Inclusive is used to denote the action which has developed for some time till the actual moment of speech and is still on).
4. **I've been out** (the Present Perfect is used to denote the action which has ended by the present moment of speech).
5. **Where have you been?** (the Present Perfect is used to denote the action which has ended by the present moment of speech).
6. **I've been playing tennis ...** (the Present Perfect Continuous Exclusive is used to denote the action which has developed for some time till the actual moment of speech and is no longer on).
7. **You told me** (the Past Indefinite is used to denote a momentary action in the past) **you were not going ...** (the Past Continuous is used to denote the nearest action in the past).

c) *Часть вторая*

Р: В чем дело, Дафни? Ты, кажется, избегаешь меня в последнее время?

Д: Избегаю тебя? Ну, конечно же, я тебя не избегаю. Мы вместе выходили в свет в среду, не так ли?

Р: Да, но это было три дня назад, Дафни. Мне очень хочется увидеть тебя. Пойдем сегодня куда-нибудь?

Д: Нет, только не сегодня, Роберт. Я чувствую себя немного усталой.



Р: Не могли бы мы выйти хотя бы на час? Я целый день с нетерпением жду встречи с тобой.

Д: Понятно, что ты не играл в теннис весь день, а то...

Р: Жаль, что не играл. Я помогал старику в саду.

Д: В таком случае ты, должно быть, тоже устал.

Р: Послушай, дорогая! Ты мне не лжешь? Или ты собираешься отдыхать с Джеймсом, или как его там?

Д: Конечно, нет. Он...

Р: Ты идешь с ним куда-то сегодня вечером, не так ли?

Д: Нет. Я сказала тебе. Я никуда не хочу идти сегодня вечером.

Р: Теперь мне понятно почему. Ты собираешься сидеть весь вечер у телефона, ожидая, пока твой возлюбленный Джимми позвонит тебе.

Р: Не будь смешным, Роберт. Он, Джимми, не мой возлюбленный. Между прочим, его зовут Джеймс. И ему не нравится, когда его называют Джимми.

- е) 1. **You seem (the Present Indefinite is used to denote the present matter-of-fact action) to have been avoiding me ... (the Present Perfect Continuous Inclusive is used to denote the action which has developed for some time till the actual moment of speech and is still on).**
2. **I'm longing to see you (the Present Continuous is used to denote the continuous state of feeling at present).**
3. **I'm feeling a bit tired (the Present Continuous is used to denote the continuous state of feeling at present).**
4. **I've been looking forward ... (the Present Perfect Continuous Inclusive is used to denote the action which has developed for some time till the actual moment of speech and is still on).**
5. **You haven't been playing tennis ... (the Present Perfect Continuous Exclusive is used to denote the action which has developed for some time till the actual moment of speech and is no longer on).**
6. **You've been helping the old man ... (the Present Perfect Continuous Inclusive is used to denote the action which**

has developed for some time till the actual moment of speech and is still on).

7. ... you must be feeling tired too (the Present Continuous is used to denote the continuous state of feeling at present).
8. Are you telling me the truth? (the Present Continuous is used to denote the continuous action at the present moment of speech).

9)

### Часть третья

Р: Ох, не нравится, да? Если я доберусь до него, его будут называть «Джимми со шрамом на лице». Я полагаю, ты встречаешься с этим беднягой каждый день. Вот почему ты не встречаешься со мной.

Д: Конечно, нет. Да перестань же говорить вздор, Роберт, и послушай...

Р: Твое объяснение? Не надо беспокоиться. Я все прекрасно понимаю. (*Дразнит ее.*) О, привет, Джеймс, дорогой. Я все думала, позвонишь ли ты сегодня вечером. Я не дурак, видишь ли.

Д: В последний раз... ты будешь слушать?

Р: Давай. Я весь внимание.

Д: Джеймс — это мой двоюродный брат. Ему тридцать четыре, он женат, и у него трое детей. На следующей неделе он приезжает в Лондон из Шотландии и остановится у нас. Мы ожидаем звонка от него сегодня вечером.

Р: Твой двоюродный брат? Честно? Женат? Почему, черт побери, ты не сказала об этом?

Д: Ты мне не давал слова вставить.

Р: Когда мы снова увидимся?

Д: Через полчаса... если тебе не очень стыдно за свое поведение.

- h) 1. If I get (the Present Indefinite is used in conditional sentences to denote the future action) **my hands on him** people will be calling him ... (the Future Continuous is used to denote a continuous action in the future).
2. You've been seeing this poor fish ... (the Present Perfect Continuous Inclusive is used to denote the action which

has developed for some time till the actual moment of speech and is still on).

3. **He is coming to London ...** (the Present Continuous is used to denote the action coming in the nearest future) **and he'll be staying with us ...** (the Future Continuous is used to denote the continuous action in the future).

## **Grammar Exercises**

### **To Lessons 1–3**

#### **Ex. 1, p. 459**

1. a) the main parts of the sentence: the subject — **James**, the predicate — **was sitting**; b) the secondary part of the sentence: the adverbial modifier — **by the fire**
2. a) the main parts of the sentence: the subject — **sister**, the predicate — **has**; b) the secondary parts of the sentence: the object — **two sons**; the attributes — **my, elder**
3. a) the main parts of the sentence: the subjects — **he, the room**, the predicates — **opened, was empty**; b) the secondary parts of the sentence: the object — **the door**, the adverbial modifier — **slowly**
4. a) the main parts of the sentence: the subject — **the children**, the predicate — **ran**; b) the secondary part of the sentence: the adverbial modifier — **to the river**
5. a) the main parts of the sentence: the subject — **we**, the predicate — **sent**; b) the secondary parts of the sentence: the objects — **them, a telegram**, the adverbial modifier — **yesterday**
6. a) the main parts of the sentence: the subject — **you**, the predicate — **will do**; b) the secondary parts of the sentence: the objects — **me, favour**, the attribute — **another**
7. a) the main parts of the sentence: the subject — **I**, the predicate — **will do**; b) the secondary parts of the sentence: the objects — **it, for you**, the adverbial modifier — **with pleasure**
8. a) the main parts of the sentence: the subject — **we**, the predicate — **shall write**; b) the secondary parts of the sentence: the object — **to you**, the adverbial modifier — **in a day or two**
9. a) the main parts of the sentence: the subject — **I**, the predicate — **did not find**; b) the secondary parts of the

sentence: the object — **anybody**, the adverbial modifier — **there**

10. a) the main parts of the sentence: the subject — **the mother**, the predicate — **was a woman**; b) the secondary part of the sentence: the attributes — **boy's, young**
11. a) the main parts of the sentence: the subject — **half an hour**, the predicate — **has passed**
12. a) the main parts of the sentence: the subject — **the students**, the predicate — **were present**; b) the secondary part of the sentence: the attribute — **a lot of**
13. a) the main parts of the sentence: the subject — **Nell**, the predicate — **is going**; b) the secondary parts of the sentence: the adverbial modifier — **to the concert, tonight**
14. a) the main parts of the sentence: the subject — **he**, the predicate — **spoke**; b) the secondary parts of the sentence: the adverbial modifier — **loudly, distinctly**

#### Ex. 2, p. 459

1. It is good.
2. I can do it.
3. His story was true.
4. That is a good idea.
5. I have finished my work.
6. It is raining.
7. It is not real coffee.
8. I shall write a postcard to Doctor Wing now.
9. I understand, he is a writer.
10. "She is a wonderful woman," said the girl softly.

#### Ex. 3, p. 459

1. This is a yellow pencil.
2. The text is easy.
3. This is an easy text.
4. These are low tables.
5. This table is low.
6. This is a low table.
7. Roses are beautiful flowers.

8. A fox is yellow.
9. This town is big.
10. Moscow and Minsk are big cities.
11. Kiev is a big city, too.
12. These flowers are very beautiful.

**Ex. 4, p. 459**

1. Give me (indirect) a knife (direct) and a small spoon (direct), please.
2. It is raining, you must give her (indirect) your umbrella (direct).
3. Tell us (indirect) your story (direct).
4. Tell it (direct) to him (indirect), too.
5. I know nothing (direct) about it (prepositional).
6. Show me (indirect) your room (direct).
7. I want to buy a doll (direct) for my little sister (prepositional).
8. I haven't seen the children (direct) today.
9. Help me (indirect), please.
10. See me (direct) tomorrow.
11. You'll forget him (direct).
12. She writes letters (direct) to her cousins (indirect).

**Ex. 5, p. 460**

1. Give me (indirect) a match (direct), please.
2. Put all possible questions (indirect) to this sentence (prepositional).
3. Will you pass me (indirect) the sugar (direct)?
4. I addressed her (indirect) twice before she answered me (indirect).
5. He handed the letter (direct) to his wife (indirect).
6. I need a book (direct) with pictures for my little daughter (prepositional).
7. Everybody listened to him (prepositional) with interest.
8. Pegotty opened a little door and showed me (indirect) my bedroom (direct).

9. We are sorry for him (prepositional).
10. He stopped and shook hands (direct) with me (prepositional).
11. She put the kettle (direct) on the fire (prepositional).
12. We looked for the boy (prepositional) everywhere.

**Ex. 6, p. 460**

1. **angry** — an attribute expressed by an adjective
2. **Mary's** — an attribute expressed by the possessive form of the noun; **next** — an attribute expressed by an adjective
3. **smiling** — an attribute expressed by Participle I
4. **walking** — an attribute expressed by Participle I; **grammar** — an attribute expressed by a noun
5. **good, clever** — attributes expressed by adjectives
6. **of this book** — an attribute expressed by a noun with a preposition
7. **cold** — an attribute expressed by an adjective; **winter** — an attribute expressed by a noun
8. **of Moscow** — an attribute expressed by a noun with a preposition
9. **all** — an attribute expressed by an adjective; **Moscow** — an attribute expressed by a proper noun
10. **interesting** — an attribute expressed by an adjective
11. **difficult** — an attribute expressed by an adjective
12. **better** — an attribute expressed by an adjective

**Ex. 7, p. 460**

1. **well** — an adverbial modifier of manner expressed by an adverb
2. **home** — an adverbial modifier of direction expressed by a noun; **at four o'clock** — an adverbial modifier of time expressed by a prepositional phrase
3. **there** — an adverbial modifier of place expressed by an adverb; **late** — an adverbial modifier of time expressed by an adjective

4. **with a smile** — an adverbial modifier of manner expressed by a prepositional phrase
5. **in a low voice** — an adverbial modifier of manner expressed by a prepositional phrase
6. **upstairs** — an adverbial modifier of manner expressed by an adverb
7. **into the room** — an adverbial modifier of direction expressed by a noun with a preposition; **from the kitchen** — an adverbial modifier of direction expressed by a noun with a preposition
8. **with pleasure** — an adverbial modifier of manner expressed by a prepositional phrase
9. **in the street** — an adverbial modifier of place expressed by a noun with a preposition
10. **early** — an adverbial modifier of time expressed by an adverb; **in the morning** — an adverbial modifier of time expressed by a noun with a preposition
11. **out** — an adverbial modifier of direction expressed by an adverb
12. **there** — an adverbial modifier of direction expressed by an adverb; **for an hour** — an adverbial modifier of direction expressed by a noun with a preposition

**Ex. 8, p. 461**

1. He went to the theatre by taxi at seven o'clock.
2. She stood on the porch looking at the road.
3. Felix lived in France for a long time.
4. We went to the village shop after dinner.
5. They left for London in a hurry at about 12 o'clock.
6. We started there immediately after dinner.
7. Don't forget that you must come here regularly every morning.
8. I will meet you at the college gates at three o'clock tomorrow.
9. Did you come to work on your bicycle this morning?
10. I went to St. Petersburg by air last month.



**Ex. 9, p. 461**

1. She always has a few mistakes in her composition.
2. I can never agree to that.
3. We usually have six lessons a day.
4. Old Mrs. Pratt is often ill.
5. You are always kind to me.
6. I seldom met him there.
7. We are generally very busy.
8. They will never believe it, I'm sure.
9. My friend seldom stays long with us.
10. We are just going for a walk.

**Ex. 10, p. 462**

1. Where do you usually spend the summer?
2. Do you always prepare your lessons in the afternoon?
3. Did he often come so late?
4. Are you always in time?
5. When do they usually start working?
6. Have you ever seen him?
7. Are you just going for a walk?
8. Do the children often quarrel with each other?
9. Has you uncle ever mentioned this fact?
10. Must you always get up so early?

**Ex. 11, p. 462**

1. Do you like the story very much?
2. I can't say that I like the idea very much.
3. Would it matter very much if we arrive about ten minutes later?
4. They were very much surprised to meet the two sisters there.
5. John regrets very much that he cannot take part in the discussion.
6. I was very much disappointed to find out that the letter was lost.
7. We enjoyed ourselves very much at the party.

8. He said that he was very much impressed by her progress.
9. I doubt very much that they have ever visited Japan.
10. I like a cup of hot tea very much at five o'clock.

**Ex. 12, p. 462**

1. Give me a pencil and a piece of paper.
2. Every week Mr. Barnett brings Mary new books and magazines.
3. General Henderson was a tall man with white hair.
4. Nancy was putting on her gloves in a slow way.
5. I can show you something interesting.
6. I have some good English books.
7. I can bring them to you to the Institute.
8. It was a cold January night.
9. We can't stay here long.
10. I like coffee in the morning.

**Ex. 13, p. 463**

1. He is a good friend.
2. I am cold.
3. Pass this book to him.
4. Write / put down your address for me.
5. I can tell you an interesting story.
6. He speaks English well.
7. Explain it to him.
8. I wrote a letter to my parents yesterday.
9. Can you give me your textbook?
10. It is good.
11. The teacher spoke in a loud voice.
12. It is clear.
13. Close your books and listen to me.
14. It is very easy.

**Ex. 14, p. 463**

1. It is correct.
2. Spell the word correctly.

3. You know it well.
4. Of course it is good.
5. It is cold in the room.
6. Don't look so coldly at me.
7. It is easy.
8. I can do it easily.
9. It is warm today.
10. He always greets us warmly.

**Ex. 15, p. 463**

stories, fish, knives, men, dresses, teeth, lamps, boxes, brothers, brothers-in-law, dogs, feet, benches, hospitals, beds, sentences, ladies, toys, exercises, children, women, sheep, nieces, sons-in-law, families, halves, libraries, wives, potatoes, sportsmen

**Ex. 16, p. 463**

1. Do you know him?
2. Who is there? — It's me.
3. They invite us to their party.
4. And do you invite them?
5. Ask her to come, too.

**Ex. 17, p. 463**

*The Singular:*

**It** is the Nominative Case and the Objective Case.

**She** is the Nominative Case.

**Him** is the Objective Case.

**You** is the Nominative Case and the Objective Case.

**Me** is the Objective Case.

**Her** is the Objective Case.

**I** is the Nominative Case.

**He** is the Nominative Case.

*The Plural:*

**We** is the Nominative Case.

**Them** is the Objective Case.

**You** is the Nominative Case and the Objective Case.  
**They** is the Nominative Case.  
**Us** is the Objective Case.

**Ex. 18, p. 464**

1. Это не очень длинные предложения, не так ли?
2. Это не коробка.
3. Это не коробки.
4. Эта книга очень интересная.
5. Те книги были не очень интересные.
6. Это простые предложения.
7. Эта фонема легкая, те две были более трудные.
8. Это мои тетради.
9. Это твои вещи?
10. То были очень красивые цветы.
11. Возьмите те цветы, они очень красивые.
12. Это мои туфли.

**Ex. 19, p. 464**

1. This is a phoneme.
2. We have an English and a French book.
3. A rose is a beautiful flower.
4. A house has a roof.
5. That is a little child.
6. A fox is an animal.
7. A watch is a small clock.
8. A classroom has a blackboard.
9. This is an old oak.
10. A dog has a tail.
11. That boy is a good friend.
12. A ball is round.

**Ex. 20, p. 464**

1. Is Mrs. Sandford in bed?
2. Are these words easy?
3. Is she a good student?

4. Are they in the garden?
5. Is her daughter a teacher?
6. Are the children at school?
7. Is John 19 years old?
8. Is Lesson 9 difficult?
9. Is it 10 o'clock?
10. Are the flowers yellow?
11. Are you future teachers?

## To Lessons 4–5

### Ex. 21, p. 464

1. Your family is not large, is it?
2. The children are in the garden, aren't they?
3. This man is a doctor, isn't he?
4. His parents are not in Moscow, are they?
5. It is six o'clock now, isn't it?
6. Benny is not in the nursery, is he?
7. They are old friends, aren't they?
8. This is a very interesting book, isn't it?

### Ex. 22, p. 465

1. Is the girl small? Is the girl small or big?
2. Are the children at school? Are the children at school or at the library?
3. Is it dark in the room? Is it dark or light in the room?
4. Is this a velvet dress? Is this a velvet or a woolen dress?
5. Is the dog in the yard? Is the dog in the yard or in the garden?
6. Are they busy all the time? Are they busy all the time or only in the morning? / Are they busy or free all the time?

### Ex. 23, p. 465

1. Please go to the blackboard.

2. Give me a fountain pen, please.
3. Please, fetch some chalk.
4. Find Lesson 11, please.
5. Please, speak louder.
6. Meet me at 5, please.
7. Please, go with me to the laboratory.
8. Write Exercise 3 at home, please.
9. Please, learn this poem by heart.
10. Write down the new words, please.
11. Please, repeat the sentence three times.
12. Look at the blackboard, please.
13. Please, listen to the new text.
14. Show me the way to the theatre, please.

**Ex. 24, p. 465**

1. Don't open the door.
2. Don't leave the room.
3. Don't take the chalk.
4. Don't write this exercise.
5. Don't make such a noise.
6. Don't smoke in the room.
7. Don't send a telegram today.
8. Don't bite the pencil.
9. Don't talk so loudly.
10. Don't go there alone.
11. Don't close the window.
12. Don't read Text 7.
13. Don't be late next time.

**Ex. 25, p. 465**

1. Who is always at home in the evening? When is she always at home?
2. What is on the shelf? Where are the books?
3. Whose wife is in the garden?
4. What kind of sentence is it?
5. Whose parents are in Kiev? Where are his parents?

6. Who is at school at this time? When are the children at school?
7. How old is your mother?

**Ex. 26, p. 465**

1. I don't like to go out when it is cold.
2. Open the window, please, it is hot in the room.
3. Switch on the light, it is already dark.
4. Let's wait a little, it is still very early.
5. The lesson begins at 9 and now it is only 8.
6. Let's walk there, it is not far.
7. Hurry up, it is time to go to the Institute.
8. Let's take a bus, it is very far from here.
9. Go to bed, it is already 11.
10. Wake up, it is already morning.

**Ex. 27, p. 466**

1. a 2. — 3. — 4. — 5. a 6. a 7. — 8. — 9. — 10. a 11. — 12. — 13. a 14. a 15. a

**Ex. 28, p. 466**

countries, wolves, tomatoes, brushes, babies, watches, sheep, postmen, days, shelves, sisters-in-law, texts, roofs, cassette recorders, pages, handkerchiefs

**Ex. 29, p. 466**

**a) Affirmative imperative sentences:**

1. Take your exercise books and write down the date.
2. Give me the cassette recorder.
3. Bring some fresh flowers.
4. Tell me the time.
5. Speak your mind, don't beat about the bush.
6. Answer my questions.
7. Go to the English laboratory.
8. Read Exercise 29 on page 466.
9. Write down your telephone number for me.

10. Come to my place tonight.
11. Repeat all the grammar rules of Lesson 3.
12. Begin writing the exercise.
13. Forget everything immediately.
14. Switch on the light, it is already dark.
15. Show the photograph to my grandmother.
16. Listen to the lecturer.
17. Wait for me until I come back.
18. Put on your raincoat, it is going to rain.
19. Take off your hat, you are in the church, aren't you?

**b) Negative imperative sentences:**

1. Don't take mother's notebook.
2. Don't give advice too much.
3. Don't bring him to the party.
4. Don't tell him the truth.
5. Don't speak in such a loud voice.
6. Don't answer his letter immediately.
7. Don't go home alone.
8. Don't read this nonsense.
9. Don't write such long compositions.
10. Don't come to my place tonight.
11. Don't repeat this question day by day.
12. Don't begin whistling so early.
13. Don't forget to take the book from the library.
14. Don't switch on the light, the baby is sleeping.
15. Don't show your ignorance.
16. Don't look through this glass.
17. Don't listen to that tomfoolishness.
18. Don't wait for me, I shall be back in a fortnight.
19. Don't put on that gaudy tie.
20. Don't take off your shoes, it is cold here.

**Ex. 30, p. 466**

1. This is a rule to remember.
2. There is nothing to worry about.
3. These are the letters to read.
4. You are just the man to speak to.



5. This is a poem to learn.
6. Have you got anything to say?
7. He is always the first to come.
8. I have nothing to answer.
9. Is there anything to eat?
10. This is the first thing to do.
11. It is just the moment to apologize.

**Ex. 31, p. 466**

old — older — the oldest  
bad — worse — the worst  
cold — colder — the coldest  
loud — louder — the loudest  
clean — cleaner — the cleanest  
large — larger — the largest  
cosy — cosier — the cosiest  
comfortable — more comfortable — the most comfortable  
modern — more modern — the most modern  
long — longer — the longest  
dark — darker — the darkest  
good — better — the best  
small — smaller — the smallest  
interesting — more interesting — the most interesting  
difficult — more difficult — the most difficult  
important — more important — the most important  
easy — easier — the easiest

**Ex. 32, p. 467**

- A.**
1. The Thames is not as long as you say. The Thames is not so long as you say.
  2. She is not as proud as her sister. She is not so proud as her sister.
  3. My pen is not as good as yours. My pen is not so good as yours.
  4. This armchair is not as comfortable as that one in Father's study. This armchair is not so comfortable as that one in Father's study.

5. The film is not as interesting as the play. The film is not so interesting as the play.
  6. My bag is not as heavy as hers. My bag is not so heavy as hers.
  7. A tram is not as quick as a bus. A tram is not so quick as a bus.
  8. She is not as beautiful as her mother. She is not so beautiful as her mother.
  9. The furniture in her bedroom is not as modern as in the sitting room. The furniture in her bedroom is not so modern as in the sitting room.
  10. My dressing table is not as small as yours. My dressing table is not so small as yours.
- B.**
1. The Thames is shorter than you say.
  2. Her sister is more proud than she.
  3. Your pen is better than mine.
  4. The armchair in Father's study is more comfortable than this one.
  5. The play is more interesting than the film.
  6. Her bag is heavier than mine.
  7. A bus is quicker than a tram.
  8. Her mother is more beautiful than she is.
  9. The furniture in the sitting room is more modern than that in her bedroom.
  10. Your dressing table is smaller than mine.

## To Lessons 6-7

### Ex. 33, p. 467

1. What vehicle of their own have they got?
2. What (kind of) face has he / does he have?
3. Where / In what city do we have many relatives?
4. How many mistakes have you got in your test?
5. Who has a son and a daughter?
6. Whose friend has a very large family?

**Ex. 34, p. 467**

1. Doctor Sandford's wife.
2. Helen's elder sister.
3. My brother-in-law's friend.
4. My husband's best suit.
5. Dickens's novels.
6. My sister-in-law's hat.
7. The students' answers.
8. The workers' tools.
9. The girl's dress.
10. The girls' dresses.

**Ex. 35, p. 467**

1. The woman's face is attractive.
2. The women's faces are attractive.
3. My father-in-law's coat is grey.
4. The passers-by's coats are wet.
5. The man's voice is too loud.
6. The men's voices sound harsh.
7. The child's toys are on the floor.
8. The children's toys are on the floor.

**Ex. 36, p. 468**

1. She hasn't got any English books.
2. I haven't got any friends here.
3. She hasn't got any more money.
4. I haven't got any cousins.
5. They haven't got any children.
6. There aren't any boys or girls in the house.
7. He hasn't got any toys to play with.
8. I don't see any books on the table.
9. I don't want any more books.

**Ex. 37, p. 468**

1. Doctor Smith hasn't got any children.
2. Benny hasn't got any brothers or sisters.

3. He hasn't got any relatives in this town / city.
4. I haven't got any English books.
5. Don't give your boy any more sweets.
6. There isn't any chalk at the board.
7. I haven't got any time to speak to you.
8. We haven't got any lessons today.
9. We haven't got any mistakes in the test.
10. Don't ask me any questions.

**Ex. 38, p. 468**

1. They've got a lot of (plenty of) cassette recorders in the laboratory.
2. Doctor Sandford's wife has a lot of (plenty of) flowers in her garden.
3. She has a lot of (plenty of, a great deal of) trouble with her boy Benny.
4. The doctor has a lot of (plenty of) patients.
5. A housewife has a lot of (plenty of, a great deal of) work to do.
6. He has got a lot of (plenty of) English books in his library.
7. We have got a lot of (plenty of, a great deal of) spare time today.
8. Their family is large. They have a lot of (plenty of) children.
9. I spend a lot of (plenty of, a great deal of) money on books.
10. She buys a lot of (plenty of, a great deal of) milk for her grandchildren.
11. I have a lot of (plenty of) questions to ask.
12. He knows a lot of (plenty of) interesting stories.

**Ex. 39, p. 469****Model 1:**

Have you got many books by Jack London in your library?  
Yes, we have got many books by Jack London in our library.

No, we haven't got many books by Jack London in our library.

She has too many books by Jack London in her library.

**Model 2:**

Have you got much ice in the refrigerator?

Yes, I have got a lot of ice in the refrigerator.

No, I haven't got much ice in the refrigerator.

She eats so much salt. It isn't healthy.

**Ex. 40, p. 469**

1. There is a teapot on the table, isn't there? Is there a teapot on the table?
2. There are some flowers in the vase, aren't there? Are there any flowers in the vase?
3. There aren't any English books on the shelf, are there? Are there any English books on the shelf?
4. There is nobody in the garden, is there? Is there anybody in the garden?
5. There is a lot of milk in the jug, isn't there? Is there much milk in the jug?
6. There aren't any mistakes in your test, are there? Are there any mistakes in your test?
7. There isn't any chalk at the board, is there? Is there any chalk at the board?
8. There are some pictures on the walls of the room, aren't there? Are there any pictures on the walls of the room?
9. There is some coffee in the cup, isn't there? Is there any coffee in the cup?
10. There are six continents in the world, aren't there? Are there six continents in the world?
11. There are a lot of flowers in the garden, aren't there? Are there many flowers in the garden?
12. There is nothing in the box, is there? Is there anything in the box?
13. There aren't any new words in the text, are there? Are there any new words in the text?

14. There is a lot of snow in the forest, isn't there? Is there much snow in the forest?

**Ex. 41, p. 469**

1. many, some 2. any, any 3. much 4. much 5. a few 6. little  
7. little / much 8. a few / many / a lot of 9. many / few  
10. not any 11. little, some 12. many 13. any / much 14. much  
15. many, any 16. few 17. some

**Ex. 42, p. 470**

1. a 2. a, the 3. a, a 4. — 5. a, a, a 6. the 7. the, the 8. a, the  
9. — 10. a 11. —, the 12. —, — 13. a 14. a 15. —, the 16. a

**Ex. 43, p. 470**

1. I haven't much money.  
2. You haven't much time.  
3. We didn't invite many people to the party.  
4. They don't have many friends.  
5. There isn't much tea in the kettle.  
6. There aren't many trees in your garden.  
7. She hasn't many relatives.  
8. She hasn't much work to do.  
9. There isn't much snow in the yard.  
10. There aren't many tables in the room.  
11. There isn't much bread on the table.  
12. There aren't many books on the shelf.

**Ex. 44, p. 470**

1. It is 2. There is 3. It is 4. It is 5. It is 6. There is 7. There is  
8. It is 9. There is 10. There is 11. It is 12. It is 13. It is 14. It  
is 15. There is 16. It is 17. There is

**Ex. 45, p. 471**

1. the, — 2. a, the 3. an 4. a, the, a, the 5. a 6. a 7. — 8. a 9. the  
10. An, an, a, a 11. — 12. a 13. — 14. The, a, The

**Ex. 46, p. 471**

1. Are there any other children in the family? — No, I'm an only child.
2. Your brother is a student and he is 19, isn't he? — Yes, he is a student, but he isn't 19, he is 18.
3. There are many people in the street.
4. There is no milk in the jug.
5. They have two children — a boy and a girl.
6. There are such people, aren't there?
7. Is there a garden behind your school? — Yes, there is.
8. Are there any parks in your town? — Yes, there are, but not many, two or three.
9. Have you got any questions?
10. There is a clock on the table near the window.
11. Your books and exercise books are on the shelf.
12. Are there any exercise books on the shelf? — Yes, there are. These are my exercise books.
13. What is there on the table? — There is a teapot and a cup there.
14. Who is in the next room?
15. Is there anybody in the next room?
16. Are there any wardrobes in your room?
17. There is some sugar on the table, but very little.
18. Benny has many toys.
19. Tom has few toys.
20. We have little time, it is already half past one.

**To Lessons 8–9**
**Ex. 47, p. 471**

lawns, bushes, deer, pantries, sitting rooms, studies, sofas, phonemes, exercises, housewives, sons-in-law, nurseries, children, women, families, boys, shelves, mice, pence / pennies, faces, tomatoes, mothers-in-law, toys, sentences, leaves, sheep, pianos, policemen

**Ex. 48, p. 472**

1. There is 2. There is 3. There is 4. It is, there is 5. There is  
6. It is, there is 7. It is 8. It is 9. There is 10. It is 11. There  
is 12. It is 13. It is 14. It is 15. There is 16. It is

**Ex. 49, p. 472**

- a) apple, ball, sea, dress, tomato, mountain, foreigner, class,  
shop, corner, artist, sentence, subject, mistake
- b) literature, sugar, music, news, soup, advice, friendship,  
money, poetry, ice

**Ex. 50, p. 472**

1. — 2. some 3. — 4. some 5. —, some 6. Some, — 7. some  
8. —, — 9. — 10. some 11. — 12. some 13. — 14. some  
15. some

**Ex. 51, p. 472**

1. — 2. —, — 3. A, — 4. a, — 5. —, a, — 6. a, —, a 7. a, —,  
— 8. a, — 9. — 10. —, a

**Ex. 52, p. 473**

1. The houses are not large but they are comfortable.
2. Studies are rooms where we study, read or write.
3. The furniture is old-fashioned.
4. There are pantries in the houses.
5. Have you got any exercises to do?
6. There are green lawns behind the houses.
7. Are their families large?
8. These television sets cost a lot of money.
9. What is there in those boxes?
10. These cupboards are new and modern.
11. There is no soup in our plates.
12. Are the curtains white or yellow?
13. There is a lot of snow in winter.
14. The women's dresses are bright.



15. Cities are big towns.
16. The children's toys are on the floor.

**Ex. 53, p. 473**

1. my 2. mine 3. her 4. Her, yours 5. mine 6. yours 7. their, ours 8. her 9. My, yours 10. mine 11. mine, yours 12. Hers

**Ex. 54, p. 473**

1. Give me your dictionary for a moment.
2. Tell it to him, not to me.
3. Where is she? I don't see her.
4. Doctor Sandford is his companion.
5. What's the matter with her? Is she ill?
6. It is not my exercise book. Mine is in a blue cover.
7. She is better today. Tell the doctor about it.
8. I want to have a talk with her.
9. Take this flower and give it to Betty.
10. Don't ask us, ask them.
11. This is a bad pencil. I cannot write with it.
12. Don't sit down on this chair, it has a broken leg.
13. My room is larger than yours.
14. This is an old book; it has yellow leaves.

**Ex. 55, p. 473**

1. Can 2. May 3. can 4. Can 5. May 6. may 7. cannot 8. may 9. May 10. cannot

**Ex. 56, p. 474**

1. No, you mustn't. 2. I'm afraid not. 3. No, he needn't.
4. I'm afraid not. 5. No, you needn't. 6. No, you can't. 7. No, you needn't. 8. I'm afraid not. 9. No, you can't. 10. No, you can't.

**Ex. 57 p. 474**

1. May I help you? — Do, please.
2. You must remember the address and go there at once.

3. A man wants to see you. — You may show him in.
4. Must I pay to you right now? — No, you needn't; I can wait.
5. You must sign the letter and put the date.
6. He can do it in time, can't he?
7. Can I see Doctor Sandford? — (a) Yes, you can. He is in the study. This way, please. (b) No, you can't. He is out.
8. May I switch on the radio? — I'm afraid not. The children must go to bed.
9. May I put the books on the table for the present?
10. What can I do for you? — You can do much for me.
11. For the present you needn't do it.
12. May I ask you a question? — Do, please. / You are welcome.

## To Lessons 10

### Ex. 58, p. 474

1. My little sister goes to school every day.
2. The sun rises in the east.
3. Bad students never work hard.
4. It often snows in winter.
5. He wakes up at seven and has breakfast at half past seven.
6. The teacher points at the blackboard when he wants to explain something.
7. Mother always cooks in the morning.
8. I see what you mean.
9. She says she hears nothing.
10. There is a girl downstairs who wants to see you.
11. My friend goes there nearly every week.

### Ex. 59, p. 475

1. He does not take English lessons. Does he take English lessons?

2. She does not walk to the Institute. Does she walk to the Institute?
3. They do not often go to the laboratory. Do they often go to the laboratory?
4. She does not write to her mother every day. Does she write to her mother every day?
5. He does not come to see us on Sunday. Does he come to see us on Sunday?
6. Tony does not read newspapers in the evening before going to bed. Does Tony read newspapers in the evening before going to bed?

**Ex. 60, p. 475**

1. My friend wants to study French.
2. He remembers everything.
3. The child receives a lot of pleasure from this game.
4. Does this girl go to the theatre on Saturday?
5. His friend works in St. Petersburg.
6. The child plays all the morning and sleeps in the afternoon.
7. My friend likes meat and does not like fish.
8. He lives in a small house which has three rooms.
9. His brother works hard all day, and wants to rest in the evening.
10. He gets new books from the library every week.
11. The postman brings letters three times a day.
12. He wants to buy some toys, because his son has a birthday tomorrow.
13. This girl comes to our library every Thursday.
14. His holiday finishes in August.
15. The boy wakes up at seven.
16. A housewife has to work very hard.
17. On Saturday he goes to the cinema.
18. He knows English well and can answer all my questions.
19. Our father works in an office and does not come home for lunch.
20. He does not believe her stories.

**Ex. 61, p. 475**

1. They do not receive the *Times*. Do they receive the *Times*?
2. Benny does not knock at the door of his father's study every morning. Does Benny knock at the door of his father's study every morning?
3. They do not want to see this film. Do they want to see this film?
4. There are no mistakes in your composition. Are there any mistakes in your composition?
5. Benny does not often show Mr. White his toys. Does Benny often show Mr. White his toys?
6. She does not remember everything. Does she remember everything?
7. She must not sign that paper. Must she sign that paper?
8. The boy does not have a lot of friends to play with. Does the boy have a lot of friends to play with?
9. He cannot speak English well. Can he speak English well?
10. Our lessons do not begin at 8.30. Do our lessons begin at 8.30?
11. He does not like to read newspapers after breakfast. Does he like to read newspapers after breakfast?
12. My cousin does not live in St. Petersburg.

**Ex. 62, p. 476**

1. It gets dark very early in winter, doesn't it?
2. We can have a good time together, cannot we?
3. Victory day is the greatest holiday in our country, isn't it?
4. It doesn't take you long to get to the University, does it?
5. They have a lot of relatives in Moscow, don't they?
6. There isn't any chalk at the blackboard, is there?
7. You don't remember the new words, do you?
8. She hasn't got any mistakes in her translation, has she?
9. Benny and John are his nephews, aren't they?

10. Some of our students live in the hostel, don't they?
11. She spends a lot of time in the laboratory, doesn't she?

**Ex. 63, p. 476**

1. a, the 2. The 3. an, the 4. the 5. a, a 6. a, The, a 7. The, an, the, the 8. a 9. the, a, a 10. The, the 11. a 12. the 13. a 14. A, a, the

**Ex. 64, p. 476**

- a)
  1. You do not remember her address.
  2. He does not come home at 7 o'clock.
  3. Directors do not sign a lot of papers.
  4. They do not receive several newspapers.
  5. He does not have breakfast at 8 o'clock.
  6. Benny does not like fruit.
  7. She does not live near the metro station.
  8. The girl does not play the piano.
  9. Men do not shave every day.
  10. He does not spend all his money on books.
  11. The last train does not leave at midnight.
  12. They do not speak English at the lessons.
  13. My parents do not want to buy new furniture.
  14. The girls do not help their mother.
  15. On Sundays they do not have dinner at home.
  16. The dog does not usually bark at night.
  17. Some girls do not enjoy dances.
  18. Mary does not look well.
  19. He does not know the right answer.
  20. John does not love Helen.
  21. She does not cut her hair every month.
  22. The old woman does not feel very cold.
- b)
  1. Do you remember her address?
  2. Does he come home at 7 o'clock?
  3. Do directors sign many papers?
  4. Do they receive several newspapers?
  5. Does he have breakfast at 8 o'clock?
  6. Does Benny like fruit?

7. Does she live near the metro station?
8. Does the girl play the piano?
9. Do men shave every day?
10. Does he spend all his money on books?
11. Does the last train leave at midnight?
12. Do they speak English at the lessons?
13. Do my parents want to buy new furniture?
14. Do the girls help their mother?
15. Do they have dinner at home on Sundays?
16. Does the dog usually bark at night?
17. Do some / any girls enjoy dances?
18. Does Mary look well?
19. Does he know the right answer?
20. Does John love Helen?
21. Does she cut her hair every month?
22. Does the old woman feel very cold?

**Ex. 65, p. 477**

1. We can answer all your questions at once.
2. I prefer to have a holiday in autumn.
3. My brother often comes home late.
4. There is a lawn in front of our house.
5. He must send a telegram to her.
6. She always gives me very good advice.
7. They make a lot of spelling mistakes.
8. She has not got any mistakes in her pronunciation.
9. Every day first-year students must work at the laboratory.
10. The ninth of May is a great holiday in our country.

**Ex. 66, p. 477**

1. These are my gloves and where are yours?
2. Is it my pencil or yours?
3. It is your pencil. Mine is green.
4. Take this lamp and put it on my table.
5. Are these exercise books yours?
6. I cannot take this umbrella, it is not mine.

7. Which of you is Nelly? — It is me.
8. Here are the books. Which is yours?
9. What colour is your new dress?
10. Who knows the answer? — I do.
11. They do not know us yet, but we know them well.
12. These are very strange facts.
13. I like your shoes, but mine are better.
14. What is the matter with him? Is she ill?
15. What books do you like?
16. Who is there? — It is me.

**Ex. 67, p. 477**

1. Doctor Sandford is still in the hospital, isn't he?
2. Your grandmother lives in the country, doesn't she?
3. You have many English books at home, haven't you / don't you?
4. There are some new words in this text, aren't there?
5. You usually have dinner with your family, don't you?
6. You want to see this new film, don't you?
7. Your cousin can play the piano, can't he?
8. He does not study German, does he?
9. There is a study in your flat, isn't there?
10. We must sign this paper at once, mustn't we?
11. Little children sleep twice a day, don't they?
12. His parents are not in Moscow now, are they?
13. All the members of your family read the *Times*, don't they?
14. You do not remember all the new words, do you?

**Ex. 68, p. 477**

1. the 2. a 3. The 4. the 5. — 6. a 7. a 8. The 9. The 10. —
11. The 12. — 13. — 14. The 15. the 16. an 17. the 18. —,
- The 19. the

**Ex. 69, p. 478**

1. He knows the town well and can show you the way to the theatre.

2. My friend lives in Kiev, he studies at the University.
3. Does this boy go to school in the morning or in the afternoon?
4. He wants to buy some English books which he needs for his work.
5. This girl sings well but she cannot play the piano.
6. A housewife works very much at home.
7. One of my friends works at this plant, he is an engineer.
8. This little girl likes when her brother plays with her.
9. The child spends a lot of time out-of-doors.
10. My cousin has a family of her own.
11. My sister has breakfast at 8 o'clock and then she goes to school. She returns home only at 2 o'clock in the afternoon.
12. She goes to the library twice a month.
13. His teacher tells him that he makes a lot of mistakes because he is not attentive at the lessons.
14. She goes to work by bus and returns home on foot.
15. One of my sisters is married, her husband is a worker.

**Ex. 70, p. 478**

1. Thank you for good advice.
2. What fine weather!
3. I am very sorry, but I have bad news for you.
4. I think that only work can help him.
5. This is a difficult work.
6. He likes to give advice to his friends.
7. I do not like tea with lemon.
8. For breakfast I have an egg and a cup of coffee.
9. I like sandwiches with an egg or cheese.
10. Her hair is black and her eyes are blue.
11. This money is not mine, I cannot take it.
12. I do not go out in bad weather.
13. This bookcase is made of oak.

**Ex. 71, p. 479**

- A.** 1. You must always follow the doctor's advice.



2. I can never remember to do it in time.
  3. We always have six lessons a day.
  4. You may always take my books.
  5. She is never late.
  6. Betty is often ill.
  7. I seldom have my breakfast at nine o'clock. I usually have it at half past eight.
  8. I am always glad to join you.
  9. Old Mrs. Sandford seldom goes out.
  10. I never know what to speak to him about.
- B.**
1. Is Helen rarely in at this time of the day?
  2. Is she often late?
  3. Must you always bring the earphones for the lesson?
  4. Does he often come home so late?
  5. Do you usually have dinner at six o'clock?
  6. Is she always glad to see you?
  7. Does he ever smoke in bed?
  8. Does she always introduce her friends to her mother?
  9. Does old Mrs. Sandford usually stay at home?
  10. Does her son-in-law often visit her?

## To Lessons 11–12

### Ex. 72, p. 479

1. When / In what season do many people leave town and go to the country?
2. How many students are there in our group?
3. When do people usually get up on Sundays?
4. Where do his parents live?
5. How many foreign languages does Lucy speak?
6. What country is this young man from?
7. What language do they prefer to speak at the Institute?

### Ex. 73, p. 479

1. I can help you if you allow me to.

2. Come back before it gets dark.
3. If anybody comes ask them to wait.
4. Meet me at the station when I come back from Warsaw.
5. I shall be busy next week but if you ring me up on Saturday we shall be able to meet.
6. When you write to your French friend ask him to send some pictures / photos of Paris.
7. Wait until he comes.
8. We cannot join you until we finish the work.
9. Don't forget to take flowers when you go to meet the foreign guests.
10. Ring me up as soon as you are ready.
11. She cannot go until she finishes the translation.
12. We must buy a map before we go on a hike.
13. I cannot wait till September. I shall go as soon as the holiday begins.
14. We can go to our Bulgarian friends as soon as the school year is over.
15. Come to my place before I go to Czechia.
16. I cannot tell you anything until I know the facts.
17. We are to wait till our delegation comes back from Bulgaria.
18. You must explain everything to your father as soon as he comes from work.

**Ex. 74 p. 480**

1. Если вы хотите помочь мне, почему бы вам так и не сказать?
2. Я не знаю, есть ли болгары в этой делегации.
3. Давайте встретимся в девять часов, если вам это удобно.
4. Скажите, могу ли я взять эти книги домой.
5. Я не знаю, так ли это.
6. Почему бы не пойти сейчас, если вы хотите посмотреть иллюминацию?
7. Спроси его, часто ли он приходит домой так поздно.
8. Не хотели бы вы присоединиться к нам, если мы пойдем на Красную площадь?

9. Интересно, любит ли он свою работу?
10. Спросите его, есть ли у него друзья по переписке в Индии.

**Ex. 75 p. 480**

1. —, the, the 2. —, — 3. —, the 4. —, the, — 5. The, —
6. the, — 7. the, — 8. the 9. The, — 10. —, an 11. The, the,
- the 12. The, —, the 13. the, the 14. — 15. The, the, — 16. —,
- the, the

**Ex. 76, p. 481**

1. The Black Sea is warmer that the White Sea.  
The White Sea is not so warm as the Black Sea.  
The White Sea is not as warm as the Black Sea.
2. Oil is lighter than water.  
Water is not so light as oil.  
Water is not as light as oil.
3. Bulgaria is smaller than Russia.  
Russia is not so small as Bulgaria.  
Russia is not as small as Bulgaria.
4. Milk is cheaper than butter.  
Butter is not so cheap as milk.  
Butter is not as cheap as milk.
5. Stone is heavier than wood.  
Wood is not so heavy is stone.  
Wood is not as heavy is stone.
6. Carrots are more useful than cucumbers.  
Cucumbers are not so useful as carrots.  
Cucumbers are not as useful as carrots.
7. India is larger than Japan.  
Japan is not so large as India.  
Japan is not as large as India.
8. Meat is more expensive than vegetables.  
Vegetables are not so expensive as meat.  
Vegetables are not as expensive as meat.
9. Japanese is more difficult than Spanish.  
Spanish is not so difficult as Japanese.

Spanish is not as difficult as Japanese.

10. The Indian Ocean is warmer than the Arctic Ocean.

The Arctic Ocean is not so warm as the Indian Ocean.

The Arctic Ocean is not as warm as the Indian Ocean.

**Ex. 77, p. 481**

1. He is not working, he is watching the TV programme.
2. Kitty is finishing her porridge.
3. Look, the sun is rising.
4. John is polishing his boots and his sister is pressing her dress.
5. Is it raining? — Yes, it is raining very hard.
6. The delegation is leaving Moscow tomorrow.
7. Somebody is talking in the next room.
8. Who is making such a noise?
9. What are you reading now? I am reading stories by Maugham.
10. The weather is fine. The sun is shining and the birds are singing.
11. Somebody is knocking at the door.
12. Are you going anywhere tonight?
13. Why are you speaking so fast? You are making a lot of mistakes.
14. Go and see what the children are doing.
15. Who are you waiting for? — I am waiting for my sister.
16. I can't hear what they are talking about.

**Ex. 78, p. 481**

1. — 2. the, a 3. —, —, — 4. —, a, — 5. the 6. —, —, — 7. the
8. a / the, the 9. the 10. the 11. — 12. —, —, The

**Ex. 79, p. 481**

1. They are always hungry after classes.
2. Tom usually goes to the canteen with them.
3. Mother doesn't like it.
4. Give her some tea.
5. Is she thirsty?

6. Mother often asks Ann to help him.
7. He doesn't like beer and always prefers a glass of mineral water.

**Ex. 80, p. 482**

1. Does Mr. Smith read the *Times* after breakfast?  
 Who reads the *Times* after breakfast?  
 What does Mr. Smith read after breakfast?  
 What newspaper does Mr. Smith read after breakfast?  
 When does Mr. Smith read the *Times*?  
 Does Mr. Smith read the *Times* or the *Daily Worker* after breakfast?  
 Mr. Smith reads the *Times* after breakfast, doesn't he?
2. Does he live in a small town in the North of Poland?  
 Who lives in a small town in the North of Poland?  
 Where does he live?  
 What town does he live in?  
 Does he live in a small or in a big town in the North of Poland?  
 He lives in a small town in the North of Poland, doesn't he?
3. Must the children stay at home?  
 Who must stay at home?  
 Where must the children stay?  
 Why must the children stay at home?  
 Must the children stay at home or go out?  
 The children must stay at home as it is raining, mustn't they?
4. Is Ann helping her mother in the kitchen?  
 Who is helping her mother in the kitchen?  
 What is Ann doing in the kitchen?  
 Who(m) is Ann helping in the kitchen?  
 Where is Ann helping her mother?  
 Is Ann helping her mother or her grandmother in the kitchen?  
 Ann is helping her mother in the kitchen, isn't she?
5. Does your elder daughter like porridge?  
 Who doesn't like porridge?

Whose daughter doesn't like porridge?  
 What doesn't your elder daughter like?  
 Does your elder daughter like porridge or cornflakes?  
 Your elder daughter doesn't like porridge, does she?

**Ex. 81, p. 482**

1. My elder sister is having a music lesson. She always has a music lesson on Friday.
2. Who is singing in the next room?
3. Father is reading a newspaper. He usually reads something before going to bed.
4. Mother is cooking breakfast in the kitchen. She always cooks in the morning.
5. Who are you waiting for? — I'm waiting for Ann, we must leave in ten minutes.
6. It often rains in autumn.
7. Do not go out, it is raining heavily.
8. Do you understand the use of the Present Indefinite and the Present Continuous quite well?
9. What are you writing? Are you making notes about the two present tenses?
10. Why are you smiling, Kitty?
11. I often meet you at the corner of this street. Are you waiting for anybody?
12. Do you usually go through the park? — Not usually, it is only today that I am going here.
13. Do you hear anything? — Yes, somebody is knocking at the door.
14. They are still discussing where to go now.

**Ex. 82, p. 482**

1. We are very busy now as we are leaving tomorrow.
2. In summer we always go to the country cottage.
3. Let's go to the platform. The train is arriving in 5 minutes.
4. Trains leave and arrive strictly according to schedule.

5. The delegation of English teachers is arriving in Moscow by plane tonight.
6. Foreign delegations usually arrive at Sheremetyevo airport.
7. Hurry up, the last train is leaving in some minutes.
8. According to schedule the last train to Moscow leaves at 12 p.m. sharp.
9. When my friends come to Moscow, they usually stay at our place.
10. My sister is coming on Saturday. I must meet her.
11. On Monday I am taking an examination in English History.
12. Students take their examinations twice a year.
13. My friend is giving (throwing) a party today.
14. When they give (throw) a party, they usually invite all our family.

**Ex. 83, p. 483**

1. Please, tell me the nearest way to the post office.
2. The exercise is on the next page.
3. We must wait for some further instructions.
4. Who is that boy in the farthest corner of the room?
5. He is the eldest son of my father's friend.
6. This is the oldest edition of the book.
7. Lucy is my oldest pen friend.
8. I am older than you.
9. Jim is the eldest son in the family.
10. He is two years older than Mary.
11. Eleven o'clock is the latest time when my daughter goes to bed.

**Ex. 84, p. 483**

1. Which language is more difficult — English or German?
2. The Volga is the longest waterway in Europe, isn't it?
3. What is the latest news?
4. Today the weather is worse than it was yesterday.

5. February is the shortest month of the year.
6. London is larger than Paris, isn't it?
7. My dictionary is better than yours.
8. What continent is the largest?
9. He is not so tall as his elder brother.
10. Which is the shortest way?
11. Jim is my oldest and best friend.
12. This is the worst mistake.
13. These apples are sweeter than pears.
14. She is shorter than her husband.
15. The Alps are the highest mountains in Europe.
16. The last story in this book is the most interesting.
17. On Sundays we get up later than usual.
18. (Lake) Baikal is the deepest lake in the world.
19. Though the son is only fifteen (years old) he is already taller than his father.
20. Your pronunciation is worse than that of the other students in your group. You must work harder.
21. A straight line is the shortest way between two points.
22. My sister is six years older than me / I am.

**Ex. 85, p. 483**

*Countable:* daughters, cakes, toasts, teapots, eggs, waitresses, chops, potatoes, knives, oranges, discussions, watches

*Uncountable:* porridge, salt, sugar, butter, milk, tea, bacon, marmalade, bread, soup, beer, pleasure, water, mustard, sausage, pepper, fruit

**Ex. 86, p. 484**

1. Can I do anything for you?
2. Pass it to your father.
3. Show us the capital of Poland.
4. You must explain it to him.
5. Fetch today's newspaper and read it to me.
6. Please bring some milk for Kitty.
7. Send it to them at once.
8. Ask the waitress to bring us coffee.



**Ex. 87, p. 484**

1. Why are you walking so fast today? You usually walk quite slowly. — I am hurrying. I am afraid to miss the train.
2. Cuckoos do not build nests. They use the nests of other birds.
3. I always buy lottery tickets but I seldom win.
4. You can't have the book now because my brother is reading it.
5. Some people do everything with their left hand.
6. Who is making that terrible noise? — It's my son.
7. How do you feel?
8. Switch on the light. It's getting dark.
9. Do you understand the rule?
10. The sun sets late in summer.
11. What are you looking for? — We are looking for our grandmother's spectacles.
12. I do not know what he wants.
13. What time does she come here as a rule?
14. Look, snow is still falling.
15. It often rains in October.

**Ex. 88, p. 484**

1. The students are taking examinations. Do not make a noise in the corridor / passage.
2. Look, how brightly the sun is shining.
3. Do you hear the noise in the corridor?
4. Will you wait a bit, please? They are having supper now.
5. On the 9<sup>th</sup> of May thousands of people come to Red Square.
6. Do you like to watch TV (programmes)?
7. I do not understand what they are talking about as they are talking too quietly.
8. Listen! Somebody is crying in the next room.
9. Who are you waiting for? — I am waiting for my friend.
10. What are you eating? — I am eating an apple.
11. In autumn birds fly to warm countries and in spring they come back.

12. We are studying Lesson Twelve now.
13. The students of this group often work at / in the laboratory.
14. We are going to the theatre tomorrow.
15. Little children have 4-5 meals a day.
16. They say he is coming back tomorrow.

**Ex. 89, p. 484**

1. — 2. — 3. a 4. — 5. a 6. — 7. an 8. — 9. The 10. — 11. an
12. — 13. the, a 14. — 15. a 16. — 17. —, — 18. a 19. —
20. —

**Ex. 90, p. 485**

1. We have dinner at 8 o'clock.
2. If the supper is cool heat it up / warm it up.
3. He is never late for dinner.
4. In the morning we go to bathe before breakfast.
5. What do we have for supper today?
6. They refused even a light breakfast.
7. At dinner everybody talked about the new director.
8. It is very useful to go for a walk after supper.
9. I usually have coffee to finish breakfast with.
10. Wash your hands, supper is ready.
11. What a tasty dinner!
12. Sit down to table, the dinner is getting cool.

**Ex. 91, p. 485**

1. May 2. Can 3. could 4. might 5. can 6. Can / could 7. May / must 8. may / can 9. can 10. may

**Ex. 92, p. 485**

1. need not 2. must not 3. need not 4. must not 5. need not
6. must not 7. need not 8. must not

**Ex. 93, p. 486**

1. It 2. There 3. there 4. It 5. There 6. there 7. it 8. There 9. It
10. There 11. It 12. It 13. There 14. there, there 15. There

16. It 17. It 18. It 19. There 20. There 21. It 22. It 23. There  
24. It 25. There

**Ex. 94, p. 486**

1. She knows English well enough to talk to a foreigner.
2. The passage is too difficult for you to translate it without a dictionary.
3. He has grown too fat to be able to tie up his own shoes.
4. He was thirsty enough to drink a well dry.
5. You are too young to know such things yet.
6. I know him well enough to trust him.
7. The work is difficult enough for us to be able to fulfil it in a fortnight.
8. It's very late for you to go for a walk.
9. He is not clever enough to understand your joke.
10. She is too kind to be angry with anybody.

**Ex. 95, p. 486**

1. My sister is much older than myself.
2. This is the warmest room in the house.
3. Her daughter is a little taller than I but much thinner.
4. It was earlier than I thought, only six o'clock.
5. Where is the nearest shop?
6. He is the eldest son in the family.
7. What is the latest news?
8. Only when the last guest left the room she sighed freely.
9. Cardiff is the largest town in Wales.
10. She is much more useful at home than here.
11. She is the most beautiful girl we have ever seen.
12. He is one of the best engineers at the plant.
13. Today your answer is worse than last week.
14. John is my oldest friend in this place.
15. This is the funniest story in the whole collection.
16. I didn't like the last chapter in this book.
17. Your composition must be as short as possible.
18. He was not so talented as we had expected.
19. Which is the highest mountain in the world?

20. What can be sweeter than honey?

**Ex. 96, p. 487**

1. Aren't you ready yet?
2. He still doesn't understand the rule.
3. She's often late for her lectures.
4. I can never understand him.
5. Do you sometimes go through the park?
6. The buses are usually full in the morning.
7. Have you ever been here before?
8. I shall never have to see his ugly face again.
9. He isn't late generally, but he was nearly late last night.
10. You must always get up early.
11. I nearly always have to do it myself.
12. I am just going for a walk.
13. None of them had ever been there before and they never wanted to go there again.
14. He can always help you.
15. May I sometimes come to see you?

**Ex. 97 a), p. 487**

the handle of the door, the leg of the table, the neck of the bottle, the roof of the house, the ceiling of the room, the cover of the book, the back of the chair, the wing of the plane

a block of cigarettes, a group of students, a bunch of violets, a herd of sheep, a bunch of books, a set of tools

a loaf of bread, a spoonful of jam, a drop of blood, a lump of sugar, a cup of coffee, a bottle of wine, a jug of milk

**To Lessons 13-14**

**Ex. 98, p. 487**

1. yours 2. mine 3. their, theirs 4. his, mine 5. our, mine, hers 6. her

**Ex. 99, p. 488**

1. It is pleasant to have a bath in the evening.
2. It is nice to meet you.
3. It is useful to go for a walk after supper.
4. It is interesting to read Iris Murdoch's novels.
5. It is difficult to write legibly.
6. It is impossible to go there on foot.
7. It is high time to go to bed.
8. It is a great joy to swim in the river.
9. It is a pity to stay indoors in such fine weather.
10. It is a good idea to see the film.

**Ex. 100, p. 488**

late — later — the latest  
 pretty — prettier — the prettiest  
 sad — sadder — the saddest  
 dear — dearer — the dearest  
 gay — gayer — the gayest  
 cheap — cheaper — the cheapest  
 expensive — more expensive — the most expensive  
 far — farther / further — the farthest / the furthest  
 simple — simpler — the simplest  
 clever — cleverer / more clever — the cleverest / the most  
     clever  
 happy — happier — the happiest  
 sweet — sweeter — the sweetest  
 little — less — the least  
 hot — hotter — the hottest  
 quick — quicker — the quickest  
 heavy — heavier — the heaviest  
 pleasant — more pleasant — the most pleasant  
 wonderful — more wonderful — the most wonderful  
 lazy — lazier — the laziest  
 old — older / elder — the oldest / the eldest  
 easy — easier — the easiest

**Ex. 101, p. 488**

1. I have just seen him.
2. Have you ever spoken to her about it?
3. I have already been to the laboratory. Nick isn't there.
4. We have never been there before.
5. They haven't finished breakfast yet.
6. I have already done my homework.
7. Have you already made the beds, Ann?
8. Mary and Edward have just left.
9. She hasn't finished doing the room yet.
10. I have just finished my translation and now I am free.
11. She has never seen the sea and wants to go to the Crimea this summer.
12. When does your train leave? Have you packed your bags yet?
13. Have you ever been to England?
14. The bell has just gone.
15. I have never seen him looking so pale.
16. If you have ever seen the film you must remember this scene.

**Ex. 102, p. 489****a) Sentences expressing the completion of actions:**

1. Glad to see you! Haven't seen you for ages.
2. Have you done your morning exercises?
3. Ann has made a new dress.
4. The children has just come from a walk.
5. Has anyone cleaned the blackboard?
6. Why haven't you brought your exercise book?
7. Something has gone wrong with the radio set.
8. Have you heard the news?
9. The bell has gone, let's begin our lesson.

**Sentences expressing durative actions:**

1. I have lived in Moscow since childhood.
2. Robert has studied English for five years already.
3. Kitty has been asleep for two hours, it's time to wake her up.

4. I haven't had time to repair the radio since last Monday.
5. It is twelve o'clock, so I have been here for two hours.

b) *Sentences expressing the completion of actions:*

1. Рад с тобой встретиться! Сто лет тебя не видел.
2. Ты сделал утреннюю зарядку?
3. Анна сшила новое платье.
4. Дети только что пришли с прогулки.
5. Вытер ли кто-нибудь доску?
6. Почему ты не принес свою тетрадь?
7. Что-то случилось с радиоприемником.
8. Вы слышали новость?
9. Прозвенел звонок, давайте начнем наш урок.

*Sentences expressing durative actions:*

1. Я живу в Москве с детства.
2. Роберт уже пять лет изучает английский.
3. Китти спит два часа, пора ее будить.
4. С прошлого понедельника у меня нет времени, чтобы починить радио.
5. Уже двенадцать часов, я уже здесь два часа.

Ex. 103, p. 489

1. The, a 2. a 3. a 4. a 5. a 6. a 7. the 8. a 9. the 10. a 11. an

Ex. 104, p. 489

1. Will you, please, lend me your pen for a moment? I have left mine at home and now I have nothing to write with. — I am sorry, but I am going to write myself. Ann is not writing, she can give you her pen.
2. Have you read "The Gadfly" by Voynich? — I am reading it now, I have not finished it yet. It is a very good book, I like it very much.
3. We are going to the café "Cosmos" tonight. Have you ever been there?
4. Where is Ann? — She is in the kitchen. — What is she doing there? — She is washing up. — I have already helped my mother with the housework and come to ask Ann to go to the cinema with me.

5. Don't forget we are having a party tomorrow, be sure to bring Bob with you if he has come back from St. Petersburg.
6. Is there anything the matter with you? You are so pale. — Nothing the matter. I have just finished my work and I am a little tired.
7. Who is playing the piano? Is Mary still having her music lesson? — No. The lesson is over and the teacher has already gone. Mother is playing for little Kitty.
8. Ring me up when you are free. I have something to discuss with you.
9. I have not heard the news yet.
10. Hurry up if you want to go out with me.
11. She has sent me a letter that she is coming in a few days.
12. Do you understand what they are talking about?
13. When she calls on us she always brings some toys for my little daughter.
14. What are you looking for? — I am looking for my dictionary. I have just seen it somewhere. I think it is lying on the bookshelf.

**Ex. 105, p. 490**

1. Put on your coat and cap. It's cold out / out-of-doors, a strong wind is blowing.
2. Do you see the man at the corner? He is looking at us.
3. Helen is coming for dinner tonight. — I have not seen her for a long time. Has she changed very much? — Not very.
4. When the teacher explains a new rule he usually writes down examples on the blackboard.
5. Do you hear anything? — I am listening very attentively, but I hear nothing.
6. Have you read this book, Father? — From cover to cover. It is a good book, I am going to read it once again.
7. Who has just left the room? — I don't know, I have noticed nobody / I haven't noticed anybody.



8. On the way to work I usually meet children going to school.
9. I think you must have some hot coffee before you leave. The evening is so cold.
10. Have you seen Mary today? — No, she is ill. She has already been ill for ten days.
11. What are you going to do after classes? — I want to go to the cinema. Don't go without me, wait till I ring you up. — All right.
12. Have you been to the cinema this week? — No, I have been very busy lately. — You, must see the new film, you are sure to like it.
13. Do you often go to the theatre? — Yes, rather often and today I am going there too.
14. We have not seen him for a long time. Nelly says he has changed greatly.
15. I am very glad you have come. You always bring us good news.
16. We are playing tennis today, Nicky and I.
17. Have they already left? — No, they are leaving by the 3 o'clock train.
18. Have you got any questions? Did you understand everything (that) I explained to you? — Thank you, everything is clear.

**Ex. 106, p. 491**

1. What are you looking at? — I am looking at that picture over there. I have been looking at it for almost half an hour and I still can't understand what it is.
2. What is Mary doing? — She is practising the piano. She has been playing since 12 o'clock. I think she must have a rest.
3. Here you are at last! I have been looking for you everywhere.
4. Why are you smiling, Robert? — I am watching your kitten. What a playful little thing it is!
5. I see you have been writing letters all the morning. Is it the last letter you are writing now?

6. You have been sitting here for a long time. Are you waiting for anybody?
7. How long have you been studying English? — For three years already.
8. I have been working at my report since Monday. Now I am writing the conclusion.
9. Mary's mother has been resting in the garden all day because she is ill.
10. She has been sleeping for ten hours! You must wake her!
11. David is repairing the TV set. He has been working at it for an hour or so.
12. David is washing his hands. He has just repaired the TV set.
13. Why are you all laughing? Has Jim been telling you his anecdotes?
14. It's six o'clock. I have been waiting for Ann for half an hour. I must be off now.

**Ex. 107, p. 491**

- A. 1. a) Present Perfect Continuous inclusive,  
b) Present Perfect Continuous exclusive
2. a) Present Perfect Continuous inclusive,  
b) Present Perfect Continuous exclusive
3. a) Present Perfect Continuous inclusive,  
b) Present Perfect Continuous exclusive
4. a) Present Perfect Continuous inclusive,  
b) Present Perfect Continuous exclusive
5. a) Present Perfect Continuous inclusive,  
b) Present Perfect Continuous exclusive
- B. 1. a) Все эти дни он говорит о своем новом плане. Он больше ни о чем не может говорить.  
b) Вот мистер Мэдэн, о котором мы только что говорили.
2. a) Я уже полчаса чищу картошку, а мать говорит, что этого не хватит на всех.

- b) Почему у тебя руки грязные? — Я чистила картошку.
3. а) Дети, вы уже полчаса плаваете. Вылезайте из воды, быстро!
- b) Мне холодно, потому что я проплавала час.
4. а) Они работают в саду с 10 часов. Скажите им, что пора завтракать.
- b) Я очень устала. Я работала в саду.
5. а) Кити, ты слишком долго смотришь телевизор, у тебя заболит голова.
- b) У меня болит голова, я слишком долго смотрела телевизор.

**Ex. 108, p. 492**

1. Have you passed your exam in English literature?
2. I have been trying to learn English for years but I have not made good progress yet.
3. That book has been lying on the table for weeks. Haven't you read it yet?
4. I have been waiting here for her since 7 o'clock and she has not come yet.
5. I have been reading "War and Peace" for the last three months.
6. I have been thinking about you all day.
7. He has never been here before.
8. I can't help being angry with you; you have been sitting here all the time and doing nothing.
9. There is nothing to be proud of; you have not got a single excellent mark as yet.
10. I have been working so hard this week that I have not had time to go to the cinema.
11. The girls have been talking about their new dresses for half an hour already; it seems they have nothing else to talk about.
12. I have just talked to him; he agrees to help us.
13. Some of our students have joined the English club to get a better command of the language.

14. I have known her all my life and we have always been good friends.

**Ex. 109, p. 492**

1. I am too tired to work any longer.
2. It is too cold to go out.
3. I was too angry to speak to him.
4. It is too far for us to walk.
5. It is too good to be true.
6. This dress is too old for me to wear (it any more).
7. The music is too soft for us to hear it.
8. You are too young to be a teacher.

**Ex. 110, p. 492**

1. Did Bob come home late? Bob did not come home late.
2. Did she give them her dictionary? She did not give them her dictionary.
3. Did he take a shower? He did not take a shower.
4. Did the students go to the lab? The students did not go to the lab.
5. Did they get up early? They did not get up early.
6. Did Ann bring me a new magazine? Ann did not bring me a new magazine.
7. Did he leave for London on Monday? He did not leave for London on Monday.
8. Did they write to me every month? They did not write to me every month.
9. Did he read the letter out loud? He did not read the letter out loud.
10. Did you do it all by yourself? You did not do it all by yourself.
11. Did she speak English fluently? She did not speak English fluently.
12. Did they sit down quietly? They did not sit down quietly.
13. Did Jim see them together? Jim did not see them together.

14. Did they all hear the song? They did not all hear the song.
15. Did he pay the money yesterday? He did not pay the money yesterday.
16. Did Benny find his ball? Benny did not find his ball.
17. Did she remember every word? She did not remember every word.
18. Did Ann make good progress in English? Ann did not make good progress in English.
19. Did the boys know where to go? The boys did not know where to go.
20. Did they celebrate New Year? They did not celebrate New Year.
21. Did she get an excellent mark? She did not get an excellent mark.
22. Did my parents meet me at the station? My parents did not meet me at the station.
23. Did you think he was right? You did not think he was right.
24. Did we discuss it at the meeting? We did not discuss it at the meeting.
25. Did it trouble me very much? It did not trouble me very much.
26. Did Robert repair Ann's iron? Robert did not repair Ann's iron.
27. Did they begin on time? They did not begin on time.
28. Did you tell John about it? You did not tell John about it.
29. Did he spend a lot of time on his English? He did not spend a lot of time on his English.
30. Did they admire her singing very much? They did not admire her singing very much.

**Ex. 111, p. 493**

1. How long have you known him? — I have known him since 1965.
2. He lived in Leningrad for two years and then went to Siberia.

3. When did he arrive? — He arrived at two o'clock.
4. I read this book when I was at school.
5. I can't go with you as I have not finished my work.
6. The clock is slow. — It isn't slow, it has stopped.
7. Have you had dinner yet?
8. The performance began at 7 o'clock and lasted for 3 hours.  
We all have enjoyed it.
9. The lecture has just begun. You are a little late.
10. We have missed the tram. Now we'll have to walk.
11. Have you been here before? — Yes, I spent my holidays here last year.
12. Did you see Kitty on Monday?
13. Where is Tom? — I do not know. I have not seen him today.
14. I have lost my pen. Have you seen it anywhere?
15. Have you ever tried to give up smoking?
16. Why have you switched on the light? It is not dark yet.
17. When did it happen?
18. He left for the Far East two years ago and I have not seen him since.
19. Has the last post come?
20. When did you meet him last?
21. Have you been to the laboratory this week?
22. Why did you take my pen while I was out? You have broken it.

**Ex. 112, p. 493**

1. Have you found the key which you lost yesterday? — Yes, I found it in the pocket of my other coat.
2. I saw him in the laboratory today. We were there together.
3. Have you seen him today? He is your friend, as far as I know; help me to find him.
4. We have never met him. We do not know what he looks like.
5. She met them in Tverskaya Street this afternoon.
6. I am angry with Ann; she kept me waiting at the Institute for a long time this evening.

7. Lend me your rubber. I have made a mistake and wish to rub it out.
8. Do you know that the English delegation has already left for London? — Yes, of course, I together with my fellow students was at the station to see them off.

**Ex. 113, p. 494**

1. Students do not often have to work at the laboratory after classes. Do students often have to work at the laboratory after classes?
2. Tony did not have to take entrance exams in August. Did Tony have to take entrance exams in August?
3. You will not have to come here twice a week. Will you have to come here twice a week?
4. She did not have to spend much money on books. Did she have to spend much money on books?
5. They did not have to stay here for a long time. Did they have to stay here for a long time?
6. Ann does not always have to get up early. Does Ann always have to get up early?
7. He does not have to work hard at his pronunciation. Does he have to work hard at his pronunciation?
8. Lucy does not have to help her little brother and sister to prepare their lessons. Does Lucy have to help her little brother and sister to prepare their lessons?
9. You will not have to join any sports society. Will you have to join any sports society?
10. She does not have to clean the flat herself. Does she have to clean the flat herself?

**Ex. 114, p. 494**

1. We walked in silence for a long time. Nobody wanted to speak.
2. We were walking in silence when he suddenly asked me if I could help him.
3. He waited there for half an hour, but nobody came.

4. I was just having breakfast when the telephone rang. When I came back to my coffee it was almost cold.
5. I spoke to her several times, but she was reading and did not hear me.
6. Ann dropped two cups while she was washing up last night, but neither of the cups broke.
7. I walked for a quarter of an hour and watched what was going around me: fast cars were rushing in both directions, and it was impossible to cross the street.
8. The old man who was sitting on the bench beside me kept silent for some time. Then he asked me if I knew him.
9. She taught Russian for two years when she lived in France.
10. He remembered the day when he first went to school.
11. We were talking about Jim when he ran into the room.
12. I stood at the window for some time; the sun was shining, and I decided to go for a walk.
13. For a quarter of an hour or so he lay motionless, he could not make himself get up.
14. Alison and Cassie were talking on the staircase as I went down.

**Ex. 115, p. 495**

1. When I came they were having dinner.
2. When we were skiing it began to snow.
3. When did you finish school? — In 1977.
4. That day we had a lot of work as we were leaving in the evening.
5. How long did you study yesterday? — I studied for three hours.
6. We got acquainted when we were taking our entrance examinations.
7. Yesterday he was busy the whole evening, he was repairing the TV set.
8. He entered the room, greeted everybody and took a seat at the window.



9. Before the war our family lived in Tula. We lived there for 6 years.
10. It was known that the delegation was arriving the following morning.
11. I stayed at my friend's in the Crimea for the whole month.
12. On Tuesday I worked for two hours at / in the laboratory.
13. They said they were leaving Moscow.
14. For a long time she sat on the porch with a letter in her hands.
15. When the clock struck eleven he was still working.
16. He did not notice what was going on around him.
17. He used to read aloud to his little son in the evenings.
18. He told me that he was soon leaving London.
19. I waited there for an hour.
20. My father worked at that plant for twenty years.

**Ex. 116, p. 495**

1. He asked angrily why I was smiling to myself and did not answer his questions at once.
2. The girl said she was thinking of the summer spent in the Crimea.
3. She asked Nick when he was going to visit them. Nick replied (that) he had no time.
4. Mary said she was making a new dress, she wanted to wear it at their party.
5. Ann said they were thinking of going out.
6. The teacher asked John if he was listening carefully.
7. She asked him if Robert was coming the next day.
8. I asked if John was studying for an examination.
9. Father said that Mary was doing her morning exercises, and he did not want to disturb her.
10. Mother said to John that he was forgetting his manners.

**Ex. 117, p. 496**

1. —, — 2. The 3. — 4. —, the, the 5. a, a 6. the, the 7. The, —, —, —, — 8. — 9. — 10. The 11. — 12. —, a, — 13. —,

— 14. the 15. —, — 16. the 17. a, —, —, the 18. — 19. —, — 20. — 21. The

**Ex. 118, p. 496**

1. Каждый вечер молодой рыбак выходил в море и забрасывал свои сети в воду.
2. Стэнли поднялся, ища свою трость: «Вы, дети, играете с моей тростью?»
3. Флер делает то, что ей нравится.
4. Ему нравилась музыка, но в том отрывке, который она играла, он не находил мелодии.
5. Это становится интересно.
6. Как долго вы женаты?
7. Разве вы не знаете, что миссис Гринфилд покинула нас? Она уехала в Лондон.
8. Он уже шесть лет учится в университете.
9. Некоторое время она смотрела на это, и небольшая хмурая складка медленно обозначилась у нее между бровей.
10. Я всегда говорю Джерри, что его дядя значит больше для него, чем его собственные родители.
11. Я начинаю заново. С сегодняшнего дня начинается новая жизнь.
12. «Жаль, что ты нас прервал, — сказала Нора. — У нас был интересный разговор».
13. В тот миг зазвонил телефон. Розана подняла трубку и слушала.
14. Я все еще думала об этом, когда я столкнулась лицом к лицу с Роджером.

**Ex. 119, p. 496**

1. She left Italy five years ago. Since then she has not spoken Italian, and forgotten nearly all she learnt there.
2. When he was running after the tram, he fell and hurt his leg. We had to carry him home. Now he is lying in bed. The doctor has just left. The doctor said he had to stay in bed for a week.

3. He was looking through my album when I entered. "Do you like my sketches?" I asked him. "They are not very good".
4. What are you looking for? — I have lost my pen and want to find it before it gets dark. — When did you lose it? — I think I dropped it somewhere here when I was going to the Institute this afternoon.
5. My friend Robert has been learning French for the last three years, and now he is studying German, too.
6. Did you speak to Ann yesterday? — No, I have not seen her for a long time. I do not remember when I last saw her.
7. My brother studied modern English literature for two years and then gave it up.
8. I have been looking at this photograph for five minutes, but I cannot see you in it. — I'm afraid you are looking at the wrong one.
9. You must stop reading; you have a headache because you have been reading too long!
10. My elder brother joined the army when he was eighteen.
11. They lived in that town for ten years and then moved to the country.
12. We have lived here for the last six months, and have just decided to move.
13. He has been writing a new play for the last two years, but he has not finished it yet.

## To Lesson 15

### Ex. 120, p. 497

1. when 2. till 3. before 4. when 5. as soon as 6. after 7. before
8. while 9. while 10. if 11. if 12. While 13. till 14. When

### Ex. 121, p. 498

1. You will enjoy yourself if you go to the Caucasus.
2. Ask him if he will go to the Caucasus.

3. We shan't / won't be able to go out if it rains heavily.
4. They say it is going to rain; the clouds are gathering.
5. I don't know when he will come; the weather is so nasty.
6. Tell him to wait when he comes. I may be late.
7. Tell Mother we shan't / won't come back soon; it's much too far away.
8. Tell Mother not to worry if we don't come back soon; it's much too far away.
9. I'll talk to him about it if I see him today.
10. I'm not sure if I'll see him today.
11. She will take the children out for a walk if she finishes work earlier.
12. I don't know if she will finish work earlier; she has got a lot to do.
13. The rain won't do him any harm if he puts on his raincoat.
14. Ask him if he will put on his raincoat; it looks like rain.

**Ex. 122, p. 498**

1. If you travel by car to the Crimea you will see its beautiful landscape.
2. I should like to accompany you in case you go to the country.
3. If the weather remains fine we shall / will go for a walk.
4. We shall / will wait till it stops snowing.
5. I should / would like to know when you will come back.
6. Don't go away before Mother gets up.
7. Tell me when she will go to school.
8. The rain will soak us to the skin unless we put on our raincoats.
9. He is clever enough to understand what you want if you give him a hint.
10. If it looks like rain we shall / will not go out of town.
11. I am not quite sure if he will come on time.
12. I understand you are going to stay at home till she calls on you.

13. Please, ring me up as soon as he is through with his work.
14. We'd better stay at home if it doesn't stop raining.
15. You may go skating after you tidy up your room.
16. Don't forget to remind him tomorrow in case I don't come.
17. We'll remain here and wait for you until you finish it.
18. He must join us tomorrow; ask him when he will come.
19. I'm afraid I shan't / won't be able to join you before I'm through with the translation.
20. She promised to come tonight. Please try to find out if she will come in time.

**Ex. 123, p. 498**

1. You'd better stay at home; it is going to pour.
2. You'd better not go there alone.
3. We'd better put off this work till tomorrow.
4. You'd better come to our place instead of staying alone.
5. You'd better put on your raincoat.
6. You'd better wait for John and go together with him.
7. We'd better not tell Ann about it, she'll get angry.
8. You'd better tell me where we are going.
9. You'd better explain to me why he'll get angry if I tell him the truth.
10. You'd better send them a telegram if you want them to come sooner.
11. We'd better have a talk with him. He is a pleasant man, he will help us.
12. You'd better go and have a talk with him right now if he hasn't left yet.

**Ex. 124, p. 499**

1. I am going to travel by car this summer.
2. We are going to have a test on the use of tenses on Monday.
3. The Parkers are going to have a picnic lunch in the country on Sunday.

4. Ann is going to practise the piano all the morning.
5. It is going to be a storm, look at those clouds.
6. They say she is going to be married this autumn.
7. I got wet through in yesterday's rain, I think I am going to have a cold.
8. She is going to clean the flat on Saturday.
9. What are you going to do when you finish school?
10. We are going to see them all in September when they come from the country.
11. Do you like the song? I am going to sing it again this evening.
12. What are you going to do after classes today?
13. I am going to take my last exam next Monday.
14. The article isn't very long; he is going to translate it to-night.
15. My friend is leaving tomorrow. She says she is going to write to me every week.

**Ex. 125, p. 499**

1. The 2. — 3. — 4. a 5. — 6. —, —, — 7. —, —, —, —, —, — 8. —, a 9. the, a, — 10. a 11. the, — 12. The 13. the, — 14. —, —

**Ex. 126, p. 499**

1. It was late autumn.
2. The winter of 1941 was very severe.
3. In summer we always live in the country and in winter — in town.
4. Spring has come. The sun is shining brightly.
5. Pushkin liked autumn very much / was fond of autumn.
6. What fine weather we are having today! It is a true spring.
7. I like to be out of town in early spring.
8. The summer was very hot and everybody was eager to go out of town.
9. The weather is sometimes fine in autumn.
10. It was a cold rainy summer.

**Ex. 127, p. 500**

1. Does she always wear this hat?
2. Have you seen him anywhere today?
3. It seldom rains in this part of the country.
4. Have you ever seen such a vast forest before?
5. Will you be still working if I come at four?
6. Do you go there sometimes?
7. He, as usual, was working late at night.
8. She spoke the last words out loud.
9. We are still waiting for you. Aren't you ready yet?
10. He usually gets up at seven. Has he got up already?
11. You can never be sure how to behave in her presence.
12. You must never speak like that to your mother.
13. Can she do it easily?
14. Have you ever met him here before?
15. Let's go there together tonight.
16. She seldom keeps us waiting a long time.
17. She doesn't usually take sugar in her tea.
18. I generally made spelling mistakes when I was at school.
19. Yesterday the train arrived late.
20. The students of our faculty are generally very busy.

**Ex. 128, p. 500**

A boy who had always lived in the country and who had never heard of animals that live in other lands came one day to a town where there was a wild-beast show. An elephant attracted his attention, and he was particularly struck by an animal very much like a cat, but considerably larger, with a spotted skin and of quiet and peaceful appearance. Near the cage, containing this beautiful animal, was another of much less attractive appearance with two humps on its back and with a long ugly neck. "What is the name of that pretty animal which you have placed next to this other ugly one?" asked the boy of the attendant. "That animal which you admire so much", he replied, "is a leopard, and is one of the most dangerous of all wild beasts."

**Ex. 129, pp. 500–501**

- a) 1. Will you have a cup of tea? — No, thank you, I shall / will be having lunch soon.  
2. I hope I shall / will be sleeping peacefully tonight.  
3. My boys will be going back to college in a week's time, and I shall / will be alone again.  
4. What tasty little cakes! I expect you will be making some more cakes like these while I stay with you, Auntie!  
5. I must be off now. They will be wondering what has happened to me.  
6. I'm sure they will be meeting us at the station. I shall be so glad to see them!  
7. Will you, please, wait a little? He is coming home soon.  
8. I don't want to disturb you. I know you will be packing.  
9. It's just the time to see him. He will be working in his little garden.  
10. He is supposed to be very busy then. He will be preparing for his examination.  
11. Just a second. Will you see Cora shortly?  
12. What game will he be playing tomorrow?  
13. I suppose you will be meeting your people?  
14. Will you see him tomorrow by any chance?
- b) 1. I must go, Mother will be waiting for me.  
2. "All this will be happening to me, and very soon", he thought.  
3. I can easily imagine what my parents will be doing when I come: Father will be reading a newspaper and Mother will be cooking my favourite pie.  
4. Nick is in Bulgaria now; he writes he will be coming home in a month or two.  
5. Stay with me a little longer. We shall / will be having tea soon.  
6. The teacher says that next time he will be giving a lecture on the article.  
7. We shall / will be having coffee after dinner as usual.  
8. Don't forget we shall / will be waiting for you.  
9. Don't worry, Mother, I shall / will be having tea at the Institute canteen. Make a sandwich for me, please.



10. Bob promises to come. I believe he will be telling us funny stories again.
11. We shall / will be having supper in about twenty minutes. Don't leave.
12. Soon he will come to see us again. I can ask him about it if you want.
13. I suppose it's high time for me to go back. Nan will be wondering where I am.
14. I'll see Henry tonight. Do you want me to pass anything to him?

**Ex. 130, p. 501**

1. I need a piece of advice here / on this point.
2. Your advice is very good, but I can't follow it.
3. The information was very important.
4. What interesting work (it is)!
5. She has made such great progress!
6. He always brings us a piece of news.
7. Did you listen to the latest news today?
8. Where is the money? — It is in the bag.
9. The weather is nasty today. It is pouring and a cold wind is blowing.
10. It is pleasant to go out of town in fine weather.
11. What interesting news (it is)!
12. Have you got any money on you? Give me a little.
13. He likes the job he has found very much.
14. What a good idea!
15. Her hair is black and her eyes are blue. It makes her very attractive.
16. I can give you two good pieces of advice.
17. Her elder sister told her to take the fruit to the kitchen and wash it in boiled water.
18. This is not my money, I cannot take it.
19. Who has given you such interesting information?
20. At last he has found the job he is interested in.
21. It is such an interesting play!
22. What a good piece of advice you have given me!

## To Lesson 16

### Ex. 131, p. 502

1. He said (that) he attended the language laboratory almost every day. He added (that) he was working hard at his pronunciation, and he hoped he would make good progress soon.
2. Helen told Roger (that) she would join him in a moment if he waited for her at the entrance door.
3. Robert asked his friend where he was going for the weekend. He hoped (that) his friend would not stay indoors all the time.
4. Helen said not to ring her up as she would be working at her translation.
5. Mother said to / told the children that if Aunt Emily invited them they would spend the weekend at the seaside.
6. Alice said (that) she was sure (that) she would still be sleeping when I started and added (that) she did not want to get up so early.
7. Roger recommended us to join their company if we wanted to have a good rest. He said (that) they were going to the river, he knew a nice place for bathing there.
8. She said (that) the tall trees made a green corridor, and their leaves were murmuring above their heads while they walked along that wonderful alley.
9. He asked if they were quarrelling again and added that mother would be angry with them.
10. Mother told the boy that if he watched TV for a long time he would get tired.
11. He ordered to hurry up and find my hockey stick. He added he would be waiting for me outside because it was too hot there.
12. She said (that) she would give him my note if I liked as she would be seeing him the next day as they worked together.

**Ex. 132, p. 502**

1. She looks nice in her new hat.
2. She looked pleasant and made everybody feel at ease.
3. She looked pleasantly at the little boy.
4. Father looked sternly at me and I felt unhappy.
5. The girl looked happily at her father, but her father looked angry.
6. The woman looked helpless.
7. The woman looked helplessly about.
8. What's the matter with you? You look so sad.
9. She looked sadly at me and turned away.
10. Everything is all right with the little girl; she looks gay and cheerful again.

**Ex. 133, p. 503**

1. He was eager to go to the South and we did not think that he would come back so soon.
2. He said that when he studied he always switched off the radio.
3. Father said (that) we should / would start as soon as I finished my breakfast.
4. We spoke about our future profession. Peter said (that) he would go to his native village to teach children. There was a good school there.
5. We had little time as we were leaving the next day.
6. He was in a great hurry as he was afraid that his sister would be waiting for him.
7. My little sister felt unhappy when she got a bad mark for her composition.
8. I shall / will go home as soon as I finish listening to the tape of Lesson 5.
9. My elder brother told me not to turn on the tape recorder if I did not know how to do it.
10. I was just having breakfast when my friend called on me and said that I had to hurry if I wanted to join them. They would start early.

11. We decided that while you did the translation Ann would be helping us and then we should help her to do the washing-up and clean the room before her mother came home from her work.
12. John said (that) he would arrange everything for our trip to the seaside himself.
13. We hope (that) when he comes back he will take part in our discussion on modern American literature.
14. He answered (that) we should not be able to settle the affair until we spoke to the Dean.
15. Gemma knew that Arthur would not change his mind even if she gave him advice and besides she did not want to give him any advice.

**Ex. 134, p. 503**

Robert Robinson, my old acquaintance, had worked at a plant in Detroit. There a technical school was started for advertising reasons. The newspapers had stressed the fact that the school would be open to all the workers "regardless of colour".

Robinson's life before he came to that school had been full of hardships. His home was in one of the southern states where he had become an instrument maker. Unemployment caught up with him, and he went to Detroit where the newspapers promised employment. In Detroit a new period in his life began: an endless search for work. He managed to enter the technical school. He was the only coloured student there. The newspapers made the most of it and even featured his photograph at work. The papers, however, did not mention the fact that he was paid less than the white workers, and they kept quiet about the animosity that he was met with every morning.

**Ex. 135, p. 504**

1. Margot went to the door and locked it, and returned with the key.
2. He sighed again and again, like one who had escaped from danger.

3. Then I searched for a piece of paper and a pencil, and I wrote a message for the maid.
4. He made tea and ate the biscuits which Mrs. Aberdeen had brought him.
5. Ansell gave an angry sigh, and at that moment there was a tap on the door.
6. When the cinema was over they went for a walk across the dark, damp fields.
7. The door opened. A tall young woman stood framed in the light that fell from the passage.
8. Cassie spent the night at home, and on entering the dining room glanced at the space above the fire.
9. He walked about our sitting-room all afternoon, murmuring to himself.
10. It was all so sudden that for a moment no one knew what had happened.
11. He told me that they had been at the same public school and had been friends ever since.
12. At the age of seventy-four he was excited as a boy about his expedition.
13. Near the door he saw the man he had noticed at the station.
14. The house was much smaller than he had thought at first.

**Ex. 136, p. 504**

1. He is having dinner now, isn't he?
2. They usually have dinner at six, don't they?
3. She has a music lesson every Wednesday, doesn't she?
4. They had a quarrel yesterday, didn't they?
5. She is having a music lesson now, isn't she?
6. He had to take four exams, didn't he?
7. Next week you'll have to prepare for your last exam, won't you?
8. She had to wait for a long time, didn't she?
9. We have to arrange everything by tomorrow, don't we?
10. He had to pay a lot of money for this TV set, didn't he?

11. They will have to start tomorrow morning, won't they?
12. He has to work a lot at his English, doesn't he?

**Ex. 137, p. 505**

1. Yes, Hatte? What did you say?
2. He even did not count the money that Lammiter held out to him.
3. I looked at her. She was smiling to herself and did not answer my question at once. I repeated it.
4. For some time she was not realizing where she was and what had happened.
5. Then she got up and went to the kitchen and opened the fridge.
6. Toby and Michael smiled at each other and began to walk slowly towards the lake.
7. The silence in the room told that the rain had stopped.
8. She could not think why she had not thought of this before, she said.
9. He went away on the very day I arrived.
10. My mother was making sandwiches in the kitchen and did not hear the bell.
11. He was going to school for the first time with a bunch of flowers in his hand, and it seemed to him that everyone turned to look at him.
12. After he had left school he could not find a job and decided to go to New York.
13. The grass was damp; it told us that rain had fallen in the night.
14. Now he was looking at me with wide open eyes.
15. He could not help thinking that he had seen that face somewhere before.
16. After he read "The Gadfly" he told all his friends that he had never read a better book.
17. Roger said he would come back in an hour.
18. She turned half about and saw that the rain had stopped and it was a little brighter outside.
19. After the war they parted and he told me that he had not seen her since.

20. She went back to take her gloves and bag which she had left on the hall table.
21. The storm had passed and the sun was shining on the green leaves of the trees.
22. He looked through the window and did not seem to notice me.

**Ex. 138, p. 505**

1. He was reading his evening paper as usual when a friend of his called him on the telephone.
2. He had been reading before the fire for half an hour when the telephone rang.
3. When we went to see them last night they were playing chess; they said they had been playing since six o'clock.
4. She felt chilly after she had been swimming for an hour.
5. They told me that Ben was still swimming.
6. The boys were playing football and did not hear their mother calling them from the window.
7. The boys were tired because they had been playing football.
8. We had been working in silence for some time when John spoke.
9. He was looking at the fire and thinking of something.
10. He looked three or five minutes at the fire and then turned his face to me; it was sad.
11. At last I found the book, which I had been looking for all day.
12. He asked me what I was looking for.
13. When I entered the room Sir George was talking in a loud voice.
14. They told me Sir George had just talked about me.
15. Monty was trembling too in fits which shook his body from top to bottom.
16. She put aside the book she was reading and stood up from the table.

**Ex. 139, p. 506**

- а) 1. Как долго вы здесь сидите?  
2. Дождь идет с самого утра и мы не можем выйти.  
3. Она преподает в той школе с 1968 года.  
4. Он работает с тех пор, как я приехала сюда.  
5. Входите! Мы как раз говорим о вас.  
6. Я как раз спрашиваю его; он говорит, что ничего не знает.  
7. Они следят за мной все время. Мне это не нравится.  
8. Она уже долгое время ждет в библиотеке.  
9. Что вы делали с тех пор, как я видел вас в последний раз?  
10. Где вы были все это время?
- б) 1. She asked me how long I had been sitting there.  
2. He said (that) it had been raining since morning and they could not go out.  
3. She said (that) she had been teaching in that school since 1968.  
4. She stated (that) he had been working since she had come there.  
5. They invited him to come in and said (that) they had just been speaking about him.  
6. She said (that) she had just been asking him and he replied (that) he knew nothing.  
7. She complained (that) they had been watching her all the time and added (that) she did not like it.  
8. He explained (that) she had been waiting in the library for a long time.  
9. She asked him what he had been doing since she had seen him last.  
10. She asked me where I had been all the time.

**Ex. 140, p. 506**

1. He left on the day I arrived.
2. All these days he worked harder than you did.
3. Why don't you listen when I speak to you?
4. She worked in the garden for a long time. She did not know what was happening in the house.



5. Don't come back till you find him.
6. Have you known each other for a long time?
7. Don't tell him when we shall / will come.
8. I am working hard now (in order) to catch up with the group. I have been ill for two weeks.
9. That evening we were pressed for / short of time as we were leaving the next day.
10. Little Kitty has just been hopping about the room. Where is she now?
11. Evening came but it was still raining.
12. I am sorry I did not know you were waiting for me.
13. Did he tell you when he would come?
14. I know him, I have known him for a long time.
15. Your son has grown very much for these months.
16. I have been very busy since I saw you last.
17. I see everybody laughing. Again you have been telling your cock-and-bull stories / your tales!
18. He told (that) they had been doing that work since August.
19. She looked at me for a minute then turned away and left the room.
20. I am sure everybody will laugh at you if you put on this hat.
21. How long have you been going in for sports? — Since childhood.
22. The girl jumped up from the bench she had been sitting on and ran to meet her mother who was just coming into the garden from the street.
23. The lecture had not begun yet and the students were chattering and laughing.
24. I saw him before he saw me. He turned away and I understood that he would not answer my questions again.

**Ex. 141, p. 507**

1. The, a, —, —, — 2. an 3. a 4. — 5. — 6. a, —, a 7. a, —, — 8. — 9. a, a 10. —

## To Lesson 17

### Ex. 142, p. 507

- a)
  1. I am often invited to their parties.
  2. English is spoken in different parts of the world.
  3. Milk is used for making butter.
  4. The Passive Voice is formed with the help of the auxiliary verb "to be".
  5. A lot of new houses are built in this district every year.
- b)
  1. This house was built in 1950.
  2. The front door was locked.
  3. My pen was broken last night.
  4. The boy was punished for that.
  5. Their work was finished in time.
- c)
  1. It will be forgotten by people very soon.
  2. This book will be translated next year.
  3. You will be told when to come.
  4. Where will a new library be built?
  5. He will be asked about it.

### Ex. 143, p. 507

1. He has not been seen anywhere this week.
2. She has been invited to the party.
3. All the exercises have been done in written form.
4. Everything had been done before we came.
5. I thought the letter had already been sent.
6. Evidently he had been informed of the news before it was announced.
7. Some new metro lines are being constructed now.
8. Wait a little. The last student is being examined there.
9. This question is being discussed now.
10. The tape recorder could not be used, it was being repaired.
11. When the radio was switched on, a very interesting programme was being broadcast.
12. He has not been told about it yet.
13. Her face was hidden by the branches of the tree.

14. I know her family. I have been taken there by her brother Charles more than once.
15. I am sure they will be pleased with your presents.
16. They informed me that you had been seen in Oxford Street.

**Ex. 144, p. 508**

1. a 2. — 3. a 4. — 5. — 6. a 7. a 8. a 9. a 10. a 11. — 12. a 13. a 14. —, — 15. —, — 16. —, — 17. —, — 18. —, —

**Ex. 145, p. 508**

1. I was offered a chair.
2. He was given all the money.
3. I have just been shown a new magazine.
4. The boy was promised a new toy.
5. I have not been told the news yet.
6. You were sent the invitation last week.
7. I am sure you will be offered a very interesting job.
8. I was recommended several articles on that problem.
9. He was taught French and given a dictionary.
10. We were asked to be there at eight o'clock.
11. I have been promised some books on this problem.
12. We were shown the way to Trafalgar Square.

**Ex. 146, p. 509**

1. When was this question discussed?
2. Such questions are often discussed at our meetings.
3. What question is being discussed now?
4. This question has already been discussed.
5. When I came this question was being discussed.
6. This book was written in the 18th century.
7. When the article is written it will be published in the newspaper.
8. Has the story already been written?
9. This work / paper had been written before new discoveries were made in this field.
10. Many new houses are being built in Moscow now.

11. When we moved here some / a few houses were being built not far off.
12. A new house will be built in this square.
13. The house was built before the war.
14. This school has just been built. The studies will begin there in autumn.
15. I have already been asked such a question.
16. Such questions are often asked at examinations.
17. I am sure you will be asked many questions when you speak about your trip.
18. As he had been asked such questions before he knew how to answer them.

**Ex. 147, p. 509**

1. He is much spoken of.
2. The children will be looked after well.
3. You will be laughed at if you say it.
4. The doctor was sent for immediately.
5. She was listened to attentively.
6. I am always waited for after the lessons.
7. This little boy was not taken notice of.
8. The boat was lost sight of in the fog.
9. Why is she being laughed at?
10. I wonder if / whether he will be listened to.
11. These books are often referred to (by the students).
12. I have never been spoken to in such a way.
13. If you are sent for don't refuse to come.
14. That incident has not been referred to since then.

**Ex. 148, p. 509**

1. He realized he was being looked at.
2. Is the tape often listened to?
3. How long have you been waited for?
4. The plan has been thought of.
5. When will it be spoken about?
6. How often was the paper referred to?
7. The key is being looked for.

8. The children were constantly looked after.
9. The doctor has just been sent for.
10. You are sure to be laughed at.
11. Nick has just been spoken to.
12. The dictionary has been asked for.

**Ex. 149, p. 509**

1. The work has just been finished.
2. The report was being listened to very attentively.
3. He was not seen anywhere yesterday.
4. The telegram will be received only tomorrow.
5. A new metro station is being built in this street.
6. When was this article written?
7. He was asked to take part in the concert.
8. This film is much spoken of.
9. She was advised to write the report in English.
10. You are wanted on the telephone.
11. I was given this book only for three days.
12. This book has not been translated into Russian.
13. This play has been staged at the Moscow Art Theatre.
14. I have never been asked about it.
15. She was taught music in childhood.
16. After the lecture we shall be shown a film about London.
17. The letter has not been posted yet.
18. I wonder if he has already been told about it or not.
19. This book is seldom referred to though it was published in 1970.
20. You will be laughed at if you tell it.

**Ex. 150, p. 510**

Mor knew that now was his chance to give Miss Carter a letter. He stood up. Miss Carter looked at him, a little surprised. Mor searched his pockets for the letter, which took him a moment or two. Then he held it forth and threw it quickly on to her knee. It fell to the floor and she picked it up with a puzzled look. As she did this, a motion caught Mor's

eye and he looked over Miss Carter's head to see that Demoyte was standing at the open door and had seen the scene. Miss Carter, who had her back to the door, had not observed him. She put the letter quickly into the handbag, which lay beside her, and looked up again at Mor.

**Ex. 151, p. 510**

1. Солнце восходит на востоке; сейчас оно заходит, и наступает ночь.
2. Я не видел твоего брата в последнее время. Он уехал?
3. Сегодня после обеда я веду детей в зоопарк.
4. Я чувствовал, что она не верила ни одному слову, которое я произносил.
5. Она внезапно вспомнила, что забыла зонтик в автобусе.
6. Когда мы снова увидимся с вами? Я зайду к вам, как только вернусь из Канады.
7. Он был усталым, потому что слишком много работал.
8. Они не разговаривают друг с другом с тех пор, как поссорились.
9. В воскресенье мы будем играть в теннисном матче со студентами-медиками.
10. Я надеялся, что она скоро все это забудет.
11. Я жду здесь уже около получаса.
12. Я должна отдохнуть. Я весь день бегала по городу.

**To Lesson 18**

**Ex. 152, p. 511**

1. She made me do it.
2. I saw him enter the room.
3. We watched the train disappear.
4. You will hear him speak.
5. Mother didn't let the boy go to the yard.
6. The teacher made the pupil repeat the rule once more.
7. We wanted him to repeat the poem.

8. I should like you to come to our place.
9. Nobody expected him to say that.
10. Who wanted you to go there?

**Ex. 153, p. 511**

1. Do you want me to wait for you?
2. Did you hear him playing the guitar?
3. Do you expect them to arrive at seven?
4. Has anybody seen her crossing the bridge?
5. Did anybody make her wash up?
6. Who has noticed the stranger enter the room?
7. Why doesn't the doctor let you take the medicine?
8. Do you often see her carrying flowers?
9. Would you like him to be invited?
10. Did anybody expect you to come?
11. Can you make him paint your portrait?
12. Who made him take the floor?
13. Did your parents want you to go to the Crimea?
14. Who let her take my books?

**Ex. 154, p. 511**

1. They were looked at with interest.
2. The work has been finished at last.
3. The teacher is surrounded by the children after the lessons.
4. The key was lost yesterday.
5. The letter has been brought.
6. The doctor will be sent for at once.
7. This man can be relied on.
8. The examination questions were being discussed.
9. Have you been asked about it?
10. The delegation was met at the station.
11. Suddenly some steps were heard.
12. You will be told everything about it.
13. Peace can be won if we fight for it.
14. My question has not been answered yet.
15. What has been done about it?

16. The text is being typed. You'll have to wait.
17. This book is often asked for by the students.
18. She is spoken well about.
19. Each student was spoken to.
20. This question has just been discussed.

**Ex. 155, p. 511**

- a) 1. the, the 2. the, the 3. The, the 4. the, an 5. The, the
- b) 1. a, — 2. a, — 3. a / the, — 4. The, — 5. a, —
- c) 1. a, — 2. —, — 3. a, —, a, —, a, — 4. the, — 5. a, —

**Ex. 156, p. 512**

1. I heard somebody enter the room.
2. I saw them leave the house together.
3. We did not expect him to come back so soon.
4. Nobody heard the child open the door.
5. This will make you think how to correct your mistake.
6. We wanted them to tell us something about Moscow.
7. I often heard her ask the same question.
8. I wonder what (has) made him refuse.
9. We saw the children running into the garden.
10. I want everybody to translate this article.
11. We don't want you to do it by yourself.
12. He felt a cold wind blow through the window.
13. Aunt wants us to spend the summer with her.
14. We expected the delegation to arrive at the weekend.
15. I want you to be more attentive.
16. He felt the water rise up to his knees.
17. Make her help you.
18. They expected us to take part in the discussion.
19. I heard someone open and close the door.
20. She wants her son to enter a University.

**Ex. 157, p. 512**

Ann asked Helen if she would join her. She said she was going to the grocery. Helen agreed answering she had



spare time and asked Ann if she would go with her to the Department store. Ann assured Helen she would and asked her if she wanted to buy a new dress, a blouse or a skirt. Ann knew Helen was very fond of blouses. Helen confirmed the fact and wondered how Ann knew that. Ann answered that it was easy to guess because Helen had a new blouse nearly every other day. Helen said that time she was going to buy a pair of shoes. Ann wondered if Helen hadn't bought brown shoes the other day. Helen said she had bought those for her mother.

**Ex. 158, p. 513**

1. The letter was received yesterday.
2. This novel has not been translated into English.
3. The work will be finished today.
4. When will your article be published?
5. Have you been invited to the party? — Not yet, but I am sure I shall / will be invited.
6. Why was he sent for so late?
7. He has done everything he was asked to.
8. You are asked to get / are wanted upstairs.
9. His speech at the meeting was so interesting that later it was much spoken of.
10. Show me the place in your city where a new theatre is being built.
11. This cloth / fabric is being worn now. It is cheap and is easily washed.
12. This lecturer is often listened to with interest.
13. The facts you are speaking about were published last week.
14. She is very well spoken of.
15. The doctor said (that) the patient had to be sent to the hospital immediately.
16. In our country children are taken good care of.
17. I have just been offered an interesting job.
18. At that moment a very important question was being discussed and everybody were listening attentively.

**Ex. 159, p. 513**

1. The, a, a, a 2. —, a 3. a 4. the, —, The 5. the 6. the 7. The, the 8. a 9. the, — 10. the, the, a, — 11. The, a 12. —, — 13. —, — 14. —, the, the 15. a, a, a, —

**Ex. 160, p. 513**

1. When we entered the hall the curtain had already risen.
2. He wished he had not told her the truth when he saw her crying.
3. Though one of the leading actresses had been taken ill the performance was still given.
4. Who rang you up at 7 o'clock yesterday evening?
5. What have you had for breakfast today?
6. He rang me up and asked if everything was ready for the picnic.
7. The weather has been nasty since we came.
8. We shall / will discuss everything after we have had a cup of coffee.
9. You are too pale. Have you been ill all this time?
10. She said she was going to the greengrocer's to buy some carrots and onions.
11. Why have you come? You were told that I should / would be busy today.
12. If you follow my advice you will never regret it.
13. I haven't met such a kind man for all my life / for my whole life.
14. He said (that) he had graduated from the Institute in 1976.
15. I would like to know when she will arrive in Moscow.
16. If she comes / arrives this month I shall / will be able to see her.

**To Lesson 19****Ex. 161, p. 514**

1. By the end of the year I shall / will have read five of Shaw's plays.

2. They will have left the country before you go to see them.
3. I can give you a definite answer only after I have spoken to my mother.
4. By the end of the term we shall / will have learnt a lot of new words.
5. I hope, when you have done this exercise, there will not be so many mistakes in it.
6. I expect you will have grown up by the time I come back from England.
7. You had better not go bathing until you have got rid of that cough.
8. I'm sure you will have forgotten me by that time.
9. She shan't have any pudding until she has eaten her potatoes.
10. When I have learnt a thousand English words, shall / will I be able to read a newspaper?
11. I shall / will have written all my exercises long before you come back.
12. Don't ask for another book before you have read this one.
13. They will not return home until they have seen Scotland, Ireland and Wales.
14. I hope that by the end of the year he will have taught us to speak English a little.
15. Sit down, and when you have rested I'll show you the garden.

**Ex. 162, p. 514**

1. Don't leave till we have discussed our plan in detail.
2. I hope that by the time I am back with the flowers you have finished dressing for the theatre.
3. They are very slow in everything, so by the time they begin, we shall / will have already finished.
4. I can go only after I have looked through the morning papers.
5. By the 1st of January she will have worked 30 years at the library. We are going to congratulate her and to celebrate the event.

6. I shall / will write Lucy after I have passed all my exams. She always asks me about the examination results.
7. She promises to give me this novel for a couple of days as soon as she has read it.
8. I'm afraid we shall / will be late, and they will have sold all the tickets by the time we arrive.
9. If we don't make haste, they will have arranged everything by themselves by the time we come and will reproach us of being lazybones.
10. Don't forget to dust the room when you have done the beds.
11. Be sure to come before six or he will have gone already.
12. The test must be handed in as soon as you have written it.

**Ex. 163, p. 515**

1. He told me that everything would have been done before I came back.
2. He hoped that by the end of the month he would have written the third act of the play.
3. She was excited for a long time after she had seen the performance.
4. I hadn't yet found my seat in the stalls when the lights went down.
5. Nick was very proud of that he had got tickets for the first night / premiere.
6. She reminded me of that she would call on me at 6.15 (at a quarter past six), and we should / would have a lot of time before the beginning of the performance.
7. Robert knew that she would not go out until she had done the work about the house, and he doubted if she would come.
8. He recommended us to discuss the play after we had seen / watched it.
9. Mother told her children that she would not let them go to the Zoo until they had done their lessons.
10. She gave me the programme only when she had read it thoroughly herself.

11. She informed me that our design / draft would have been discussed soon, and asked if I had any more questions.
12. I was surprised when I knew that they had repaired the TV set. I thought they would not be able to do it themselves.

**Ex. 164, p. 515**

1. I am fond of reading good books. Good books are like good friends.
2. He kept looking at the watch.
3. Avoid making mistakes, do exercises thoroughly.
4. Stop laughing please, and listen to me.
5. The girls did not notice him and kept chattering about the film they had seen not long before.
6. She looked so funny that I could not help laughing.
7. When Ben came Tom kept working and paid no attention to his friend.
8. Aunt Pollie was sure that Tom had already stopped working and run to the river.
9. The play is not worth seeing, it is very dull.
10. These facts are worth mentioning, they are very important.
11. Would you mind ringing me up tomorrow?
12. I could not help smiling at what she was speaking (about).
13. She hates coming late.
14. He kept speaking but I did not listen to him.
15. He insisted on going with us.

**Ex. 165, p. 516**

- a) Before a week had past, the whole neighbourhood knew that Mr. Dale was going to Africa as a mechanic with a big scientific expedition. The expedition would have to cross to America with all its machines on board a big liner, and from there start for Africa. The expedition would sail to Algeria and from there it would cross the African continent to Madagascar.
- b) Anyone who has ever travelled on the New York underground railway during the rush hours can easily understand the fol-

lowing: a little man, pushed into the car, suddenly thought of pickpockets and quite suddenly remembered that he had some money in his overcoat. He put his hand into his pocket and was somewhat shocked upon finding a fist of a fat fellow-passenger.

"Aha!" cried the latter, "I have caught you this time!"

"Let my hand go," replied the little man.

"A pickpocket," cried the fat passenger.

"A scoundrel," answered the little one.

Just then a tall man, who stood between them, glanced up from the paper he was reading.

"I'd like to get off here, if you, fellows, don't mind taking your hands out of my pocket."

#### **Ex. 166, p. 516**

A new play was staged by our drama society last year. At first the play was read and discussed. It was liked by everybody so much that it was being spoken of for several days. When the parts were distributed rehearsals began.

One day a stage manager / producer from the theatre came. He gave us some valuable pieces of advice.

At last the performance was ready. It was settled that the play would be staged at an Institute party. As it is generally known, invitation cards are sent out in cases like that. We also sent the invitations to all the institutes of the town.

The long-expected party came. The hall was overcrowded, all the seats were occupied. The last bell rang. The performance began. Our play was given a warm welcome. "Who has the scenery been painted by?" "Who have the costumes been made by?" were heard everywhere. The performance was a great success and was shown many times after that.

#### **Ex. 167, p. 517**

to touch — to be touched, to see — to be seen, to stage — to be staged, to refuse — to be refused, to accept — to be accepted, to receive — to be received, to support — to be

supported, to invite — to be invited, to tell — to be told,  
to remember — to be remembered, to send — to be sent, to  
find — to be found

**Ex. 168, p. 517**

1. We did not want to see him.
2. He did not want to be seen.
3. She doesn't allow me to touch anything on her dressing table.
4. I knew that the painting was wet and must not be touched; it could be spoiled.
5. I can do the work in two days.
6. The work can be done in two days.
7. Mother says his invitation must be accepted.
8. The books may be put on the upper shelf.
9. She can't take care of the children, she is a child herself.
10. The children must be taken care of.
11. The dress must be finished before the evening.
12. Can it be done today?
13. I don't expect it to be done so soon.
14. I expect you to start as soon as possible.

**Ex. 169, p. 517**

1. This letter is to be posted immediately.
2. This article cannot be translated so quickly.
3. The answer must be found.
4. The pencil seems to have been broken.
5. He may be invited as well.
6. This rule is to be memorized.
7. The flowers may be put on the table by the window.
8. I want to be sent there together with you.
9. He must be told the truth.
10. This play cannot be staged in the children's theatre.
11. I want to be understood in the right way.
12. They wanted to be allowed to use these books.
13. I do not like to be asked silly questions.

14. It may be easily understood.
15. It must be explained to everybody.
16. I want this incident to be forgotten for ever.
17. This text may be translated for half an hour.
18. This book may be sent to you tomorrow if you want.
19. His things are to be taken upstairs.
20. You need not do the translation today. It may be done tomorrow.

**Ex. 170, p. 518**

1. the, a, —, a, — 2. —, a 3. a, the, —, — 4. —, —, the, —, a 5. —, a, —, —, —, a

**Ex. 171, p. 518**

- a)
1. Then they heard the door-bell ring. "Who can that be?" said Mrs. Wainwright irritably.
  2. Mrs. Mooney sat in a straw armchair and watched Mary remove the breakfast things.
  3. There's a conference of teachers of history at Leeds. Your father wants to go to it.
  4. He saw her eyes glint in the darkness.
  5. It was past two o'clock when she heard the car return.
  6. Tom made the boys go away.
  7. He let us take the box.
  8. They heard her start the car.
  9. Would you like me to leave now?
  10. I think I know why she makes you come here every day.
  11. She felt her voice tremble.
  12. Make your daughter help you.
- b)
1. Затем они услышали, что зазвенел дверной звонок. «Кто бы это мог быть?» — раздраженно сказала миссис Вейнрайт.
  2. Миссис Муни сидела в кресле из соломы и наблюдала, как Мэри убирает посуду после завтрака.
  3. В Лидсе состоится конференция учителей истории. Твой отец хочет поехать туда.
  4. Он увидел, что ее глаза сверкнули в темноте.



5. Шел третий час, когда она услышала, что автомобиль возвратился.
6. Том заставил мальчиков уйти.
7. Он позволил нам взять коробку.
8. Они слышали, что она завела машину.
9. Не хотели бы вы, чтобы я сейчас ушла?
10. Думаю, что знаю, почему она заставляет тебя приходить сюда каждый день.
11. Она почувствовала, что ее голос дрожит.
12. Заставь свою дочь помочь тебе.

**Ex. 172, p.518**

- a)
  1. When do you expect your friends to arrive?
  2. Why did you let the boy touch my things?
  3. Would you like me to stay or to leave right now?
  4. Do you want me to inform them of the news?
  5. Which question do you want me to answer?
  6. How did you manage to see him enter the house if it was pitch dark?
  7. Has anybody heard him say these words?
  8. Who made you act in such a way?
  9. Do you feel my hands grow cold?
  10. How did you make him agree to this proposal?
  11. What direction did you notice them drive?
  12. What do they expect me to do in this situation?
- b)
  1. I expect them to arrive on Sunday.
  2. I let the boy touch your things because he needed some comfort.
  3. I would like you to leave right now.
  4. I do not want you to inform them of the news.
  5. I want you to answer the last question.
  6. I manage to see him enter the house because I kept an eye on the PC screen.
  7. Nobody heard him say these words.
  8. My teacher made me act in such a way.
  9. I do not feel your hands grow cold.
  10. I made him agree to this proposal in a simple way.

11. I notice them drive in the direction of the cottage.
12. They expect you to retire in this situation.

**Ex. 173, p.518**

1. I noticed him nod to her.
2. The old lady liked people to greet her politely.
3. I think I hear somebody moving upstairs.
4. We expect him to deliver a speech at the conference.
5. I felt somebody touch me on the shoulder.
6. They expected me to say everything myself.
7. On entering the room we saw them talking very lively.
8. I heard him singing in the bathroom.
9. My little daughter likes me reading to her.

**Ex. 174, p. 519**

- a)
1. He was fond of skiing and skating in winter.
  2. I beg your pardon for receiving you like this — do please sit down.
  3. What I love best in the world is reading.
  4. Nothing could be harder than just lying in bed day after day.
  5. "Why do you keep on smiling?" she said severely.
  6. He stopped writing and looked up at me.
  7. Do you remember returning those books to the library?
  8. Do you mind my smoking here?
  9. I've given up the idea of going to the south in summer; my doctor doesn't allow me.
  10. I don't seem to have much time for reading now.
  11. The young officer kept on looking at his watch.
  12. Their father doesn't mind going away for the holiday.
  13. The boy looked so funny that they couldn't help laughing.
  14. It was long after sunset, but no one thought of going to bed.
- b)
1. Зимой он любил кататься на лыжах и коньках.
  2. Прошу прощения, что я вас так принимаю, садитесь же, пожалуйста.

3. Что я люблю больше всего на свете, так это чтение.
4. Ничего не может быть тяжелее, чем просто лежать в постели изо дня в день.
5. «Почему ты продолжаешь улыбаться?» — сказала она сурово.
6. Он перестал писать и посмотрел на меня.
7. Ты помнишь, что вернул те книги в библиотеку?
8. Вы не против, если я закурю здесь?
9. Я отказался от идеи поехать летом на юг, мой доктор мне не разрешает.
10. У меня, кажется, нет сейчас много времени для чтения.
11. Молодой служащий продолжал смотреть на часы.
12. Их отец не прочь поехать в отпуск.
13. Мальчик выглядел так забавно, что они не могли не смеяться.
14. Солнце уже давно село, но никто и не думал идти спать.

**Ex. 175, p. 519**

1. I like reading good books.
2. Speaking a foreign language is very important for this job.
3. You went on talking when she entered.
4. The child kept on glancing at the balloon until it disappeared in the cloud.
5. You'd better stop informing our opponents.
6. My sister began working at the age of nineteen.
7. Your manner of speaking is most annoying.
8. This is the best method of teaching a foreign language, I think.
9. The screen adaptation of A.Ostrovsky's play "A Dowerless Girl" directed by Eldar R'azanov is worth seeing.
10. He is busy writing a message to his companion.
11. I can't help smiling every time when I see that lovely nephew of mine.
12. Could you give up smoking?

13. The first thing to do after coming to Saint Petersburg is to go to the Hermitage and see the Dutch school of painting.
14. Before entering the University I spent ten hours a day on English.

## Revision Exercises on Tense and Voice

### Ex. 176, p. 519

1. *Past Continuous*: I was having breakfast at a quarter past 7 yesterday.
2. *Present Continuous*: What are you looking for?
3. *Future Indefinite*: I shall / will marry you.
4. *Past Continuous*: When Tom was frying potatoes he burnt his finger.
5. *Present Continuous*: We are going to the theatre to-night.
6. *Present Perfect*: I have found the key. Here it is.
7. *Present Perfect Continuous*: I have been waiting for you for half an hour.
8. *Present Perfect Continuous*: It has been heavily raining. Look, what large pools there are on the ground.
9. *Future Continuous*: I think I must come back home. The children will be waiting for me.
10. *Present Indefinite*: He does his morning exercises every day.
11. *Past Indefinite*: He woke up, jumped out of bed, opened the transom and began his usual physical jerks.
12. *Past Indefinite*: We watched television for two hours last night.
13. *Future Continuous*: He will be waiting for us from 5 till 7 on Saturday evening.
14. *Past Perfect Continuous*: It had been raining.
15. *Present Perfect*: It has stopped snowing.
16. *Future-in-the-Past*: He was sure they would accompany him to the station.

17. *Past Continuous*: She said to me (that) they were going to the seaside at the weekend.  
18. *Present Continuous*: You are always grumbling.

**Ex. 177, p. 520**

1. We are all so excited, we can hardly wait for tomorrow morning.
2. I hope, my friend, that you will come and spend at least a week with us.
3. No one knows when he will come tomorrow, or whether he will come at all.
4. I think he will make good progress very soon because he works hard.
5. I will gladly do this if I am allowed.
6. He lit his pipe and looked at me for about three minutes.
7. The telegram was brought yesterday in the morning when I was just about to leave the house for my office.
8. What did you do on your last day off? — I spent it in the country with my friends.
9. He has promised that everything will be arranged before tomorrow afternoon.
10. If anyone wants to see me, tell them I shall / will be back by five.
11. Yesterday he was walking about our sitting room all afternoon, murmuring to himself.
12. "I cannot think why I am always dropping things", said Mrs. Oliver.
13. Arthur waited till Gemma came up to him.
14. After dinner I had been sleeping for two hours till my sister woke me.
15. With a slight sigh he drew the candle towards him, took out a fountain pen, and began a letter to his mother.
16. Your answers must be written on one side of the paper only.
17. He promised to come if he had time.
18. As soon as you buy the book, I shall / will borrow it from you.

**Ex. 178, p. 521**

1. He promised to bring some new magazines. I should / would like to know when he will bring them.
2. It goes without saying I will accept the invitation if you also accept it.
3. Please tell him the news as soon as he arrives.
4. Let her know where the students have gone in case she insists upon it.
5. She is going to travel by car this summer, but she is not quite sure if she will come back by the beginning of the school year.
6. Don't forget to put down her address for me before she puts down the receiver.
7. I can give you my notes on condition that you bring them back in five days.
8. If you wish Mary to go shopping with you on Monday, ask her if she will have time for that.
9. I am told that a delegation of English students is coming to our University, but I don't know exactly when they will arrive.
10. If he wants to go on an excursion to the seaside with us, tell him when he must be ready.
11. I am afraid to disturb them if I come back too late.
12. Please, ring me up if you learn when the contest will start.
13. I'll communicate to you as soon as he returns the papers.
14. Dora expects us to come and see her on Sunday. She wants us to let her know if we shall / will come by bus or by car.
15. Let's go to a café when he passes the last examination.
16. He will tell you when he will leave for the Caucasus.
17. You must explain it to him before he finds out everything himself.
18. It will be done by the time he finishes his report.
19. I'll help you to look for it until it gets dark.

20. This dress will lose its colour when it is bleached in boiling water.
21. They will praise us if the work has been finished by Saturday.
22. In spite of his promise to help us I don't think he will give us a helping hand.

**Ex. 179, p. 521**

1. The girl thought that if she did not sell the flowers she would not be able to buy bread.
2. He knew she would feel quite differently about it in the morning.
3. The old captain was happy to be back and boasted he would live another twenty years.
4. At lunch Mariette told him with pride that this evening the cinema would be open.
5. Soon everything was arranged for the trip and the family started for the railway station.
6. We did not know where the new bridge would be built that summer.
7. Why did they keep it from him? — They were afraid he would be upset if he learnt the truth.
8. The old theatre in our native town was reconstructed last year.
9. That evening, at dinner she told me that when Roger came we must show him the letter.
10. The dinner was left on the table untouched.
11. He walked about three hours and he saw a little village lost in snow.
12. Peter promised to call on me before he left Moscow.
13. He asked me to accompany him when he went sightseeing.
14. She said they were glad to see Mr. Eliot at any time, and she knew her husband was.
15. When I woke next morning I decided that I should / would visit him as soon as his doctor allowed me.
16. They had to stay there until Jill returned from Paris.

17. Then she came to New York where she remained two years.
18. I had no idea when he would be able to come.
19. I said I would try to speak to her if I had a chance.
20. The examiner told me not to come again until I was prepared well.

**Ex. 180, p. 522**

1. We discussed the work of the Institute sports society for a long time.
2. How do you like to spend your summer? — I go in for cycling and playing volleyball.
3. We were surprised that she spoke English so well.
4. It seems to me this expression must be explained once again and with new examples.
5. I think we must have a bite before the last lecture begins.
6. Doesn't it seem to you that there are few new words in this text?
7. And doesn't it seem to you that serious texts require good knowledge of the language?
8. We were greatly touched by the story of Captain Meadows.
9. The doctor told them to wait until she woke up.
10. I think they will be here in half an hour if the train is not late.
11. I was asked if I knew Martha Brown.
12. Do you know where the museum is situated?
13. At the examination in the history of England I was asked very difficult questions.
14. He knew what she would ask about when she came and tried not to think about it.
15. I stayed there for about an hour but nobody came.
16. He used to read a newspaper before going to bed.
17. He was reading a newspaper before going to bed when I peeped into his room.



18. She used to close the window in the evenings as she was afraid of fresh air.
19. She was closing the window when she noticed that the garden gate was open.
20. The old captain used to come to our place and stay with us for hours.
21. He knew many wonderful stories.

**Ex. 181, p. 522**

- a) Bill said to his father that he wanted to be an Arctic Explorer when he grew up. The father said it was fine. The boy insisted he wanted to go into training at once. The father asked Bill how he was going to do it. The boy answered he wanted a dollar a day for ice cream and so he would get used to the cold.
- b) The customer said to the bookseller that he would like a book. The bookseller asked him if he wanted something light. The customer said that didn't matter as he had his car with him.
- c) The landlord said to the tenant that he had to remind him that he would not tolerate children, dogs, cats or parrots. He also warned him against piano playing and radio. The landlord must know, the tenant replied, that his fountain pen scratched a little.

**Ex. 182, p. 523**

1. Wait for me, Alice. I am coming too.
2. I am afraid I do not understand you.
3. What do you think about it? — I think you are right.
4. What are you thinking about, Jim? — I am not thinking of anything, I am just having a rest.
5. Catherine is in the garden. She is picking cherries.
6. I am sorry, Jackson, but my friend is not feeling very well, so drive us back, please.
7. Can you hear what he is saying?
8. The girl you are talking about is the eldest daughter of my old friend.

9. What do you see there? — I can't see quite well, but it seems to me Lucy is coming.
10. What are you looking at? — I am simply looking about.
11. Do you always smile when you see him?
12. Does she always smile when she talks to him?
13. Mother says Aunt Julia is leaving on Thursday and Ann is leaving with her.
14. Appetite comes with eating.
15. My sister is practising the piano; she usually practises it about this time.
16. I hear his voice in the next room.
17. What are you listening to? — I am listening to music.
18. Does she often come to see you? — Not so often, she is a student now and is very busy.
19. Who else is going with you to Bulgaria?
20. When he goes to Bulgaria he always takes some presents to his Bulgarian friends.

**Ex. 183, p. 523**

1. At lunch the rain was still pouring.
2. After breakfast he rose from the table and lit a cigarette.
3. Peter was walking aimlessly up and down the room for a long time. He did not know what to do.
4. On Sunday morning the weather was unusually lovely. The sun was shining brightly in the cloudless sky. It was such a pleasure to be out in the open air.
5. Mrs. Oliver was having her breakfast in bed when the telephone rang.
6. They discussed where to spend the weekend for an hour or two. Finally it was settled: they all would go to Brighton.
7. "I was having an interesting conversation with Catherine when Paul appeared and interrupted us," said Dora.
8. While we were watching the last scene Jean's warm tears fell upon the back of my hand one by one, like raindrops in spring.

9. She got into bed, laid her head on the pillow and in two minutes was sleeping like a child.
10. They were all alarmed by the news that he was returning and bringing his wife with him.
11. He made good progress in French as he was taught by an experienced teacher.
12. He was in a hurry and could not wait till I finished eating.
13. I went quietly into the room. She was sitting by the window staring at something.
14. Their talk was interrupted by a loud knock. Ann opened the door. A small pale boy was standing behind it.
15. They wandered about the forest for several hours. At last they decided to return.

**Ex. 184, p. 524**

1. Полагаю, что вы к нему скоро присоединитесь.
2. Джон знал, что он опаздывает. Кэтрин и дети будут ждать.
3. Я должен вернуться в гостиницу. Думаю, они удивляются, куда я пропал.
4. Конечно, вы болели тяжелее, чем я. Как вы сейчас себя чувствуете?
5. Что ты делаешь сегодня вечером?
6. Никто никогда не узнает, о чем он думал в тот момент.
7. Говорят, твой сын приезжает на выходной.
8. Полагаю, мне следует вернуться. Анна будет думать, где я.
9. Новость, что они возвращаются на следующий день, пугала ее.
10. Его мысли переключились на мисс Крэг, с которой он увидится во время ланча.
11. Она смотрела в окно и не слышала, как открылась дверь.
12. Мы сейчас изучаем времена в английском.

**Ex. 185, p. 524**

1. If you can give me new information before Monday, please let me know.
2. I am going to the library after classes. I can change your books if you want.
3. The vacuum cleaner is out of order again. Go to the neighbour and ask her if she will lend us hers.
4. While she did the room I was amusing her little daughter.
5. If you do not go to the cinema with us you will be sorry / regret it. The film is very interesting.
6. These books must not be shifted.
7. Are you feeling better today? — Yes, thank you.
8. Yesterday I was introduced to a famous actor.
9. Will you come tomorrow? — Yes, I will, if I am free. I am usually busy on Monday.
10. I am meeting my old schoolmate tomorrow.
11. Her wrinkled face looked worried and sad. Her grandson was going to become a sailor and she was against it.
12. I was not sure if they would accept our invitation to spend the weekend with us. Neither were my parents.
13. Aim thinks they will be waiting for us at 5 sharp.
14. Yesterday I waited for you at the metro station for 20 minutes and went home. Why didn't you come?
15. This new method is being introduced now in some schools.
16. When she was getting on a bus it started.
17. He lived in London for a long time and knows the city very well.
18. On the way to the theatre he doubted whether she would come or not.

**Ex. 186, p. 525**

- a)
1. He has just told me about it.
  2. I have already been introduced to him.
  3. Has he ever informed them about his plans?
  4. She has been here since six o'clock.

5. Has Jim come back yet?
  6. I have admired his books since childhood.
  7. She has been excited all day.
  8. I have not seen him since last week.
  9. He has lived in London since 1968.
  10. She has known me for ten years.
  11. We have not played tennis since last Sunday.
  12. I have heard the news only today.
  13. I have not met him this month.
  14. Has he ever told you about it?
  15. They have already left Moscow.
- b)
1. He told me about it a minute ago.
  2. I was introduced to him at the Institute.
  3. Did he inform them about his plans last time?
  4. She was here at six o'clock.
  5. Did Jim come back last night?
  6. I admired his books when a boy.
  7. She was excited all day yesterday.
  8. I did not see him last week.
  9. He lived in London in 1968.
  10. She knew me at the age of ten.
  11. We did not play tennis last Sunday.
  12. I heard the news only last night.
  13. I did not meet him last month.
  14. Did he tell you about it during the lesson?
  15. They left Moscow a night.

**Ex. 187, p. 525**

He came forward to meet me, smiling.

*I:* A nice day?

*He:* Yes, but I wish it had not snowed in the night. As soon as we lunch we shall drive into the country, and you will be able to see for yourself what kind of scenery we can show you.

*I:* I have seen it already. What a lovely journey it has been! The train passes some of the finest spots I have ever seen in the Caucasus.

*He:* The worst of it is though, that there are so many tunnels!

*I:* Yes, that is annoying, certainly, and the lighting in the carriages is as bad as the heating.

*He:* Still the train never goes so fast that you cannot admire the view!

*I:* No, that it certainly does not!

**Ex. 188, p. 526**

1. He lived in London for five years when he was a child. He was born there.
2. He has lived in London for five years. His family moved there from Manchester.
3. Is this Lucy? How she has grown up!
4. How long have you been in Moscow? — For about six months; I came here in April.
5. I have known George all my life. He is a fine chap.
6. Thank you very much for the information you have given me. Good-bye.
7. "Oh," she exclaimed looking out of the window, "I have never seen such beautiful lakes before."
8. I have done much / a lot of things today and can have a rest tomorrow.
9. I did the translation in the reading room today; there are good dictionaries there. Some of them were received from England.
10. Hello, Henrietta! I haven't seen you for more than a year.
11. He is a funny boy. I shall / will be missing him when he goes back.
12. We shall / will meet tomorrow after you finish / have finished your work.
13. The student we saw in the library yesterday has come again today.
14. Did you like the performance? They say the scenery was wonderful.
15. I have not seen him since last Monday.

16. I have not spoken to / with him today. — And have you seen him? — Yes, I met him at the laboratory.

**Ex. 189, p. 526**

1. She has been painting, or pretending to paint, for about six hours.
2. I have done a great deal of work today.
3. I have read your composition, I think you'll have to polish it up a bit.
4. They have been building that bridge for several months, but they have not finished it yet.
5. He has been growing so old that he spends most of his time sitting in an easy chair.
6. "You'll have to speak louder, I'm afraid. I have become very deaf," said Randan.
7. What have you done with yourself, Edward, since I saw you last?
8. I expect you have already had a talk with Henry. He looks more cheerful.
9. This picture has been hanging here for as long as I can remember.
10. Edward is coming! How nice! I have not seen Edward for years.
11. What have you done since Sunday?
12. I want to talk to you, Aileen. I have wanted to talk to you for a long time.
13. Well, Bunter? — Everything has been done that can be done, my lady.
14. It's no use denying, my dear Dick, that you have been thinking too much lately.
15. He has lost his dictionary. He has been looking for it all day, but has not found it yet.
16. She has read all the plays by Galsworthy. How many have you read?
17. Jim has not been here for three weeks.
18. I can't wait any longer. I have been waiting since five o'clock.

19. I have not had a good night's sleep since last week.
20. On the porch he looked over his shoulder and noticed a dark figure disappear round the corner of the house. "Somebody has been following me again," he thought.

**Ex. 190, p. 527**

Next morning, when I awoke, the sun was shining brilliantly. It was late and I had had no supper the night before, so I dressed quickly and went downstairs. I was surprised to find the doors locked and the house empty. A dozen times or more I called out my host's name, but the house was as still as the grave. What did it all mean? I began to doubt my wisdom in being so ready to trust a stranger. I ought to have gone on to the next village, where I knew that friends had been awaiting me. Instead, I was frightened by a few drops of rain.

At last, however, I heard footsteps, and soon my host appeared, looking, I thought, rather strange. He had just been out, he said, to feed the horses. But I noticed the mud was thick and wet upon his shoes and I wondered where he had been, and why he wanted to deceive me.

**Ex. 191, p. 527**

1. My father said (that) he forgot, he never remembered such things in time.
2. I told Alice not to leave her exercise book at home as we would need it at the lesson.
3. He replied (that) as far as he knew Jim had passed his entrance exams with excellent marks.
4. Nell said (that) as far as she knew he had got a good mark in Physics.
5. The boy asked if it was true that in England the grass remained green all the year round.
6. He inquired what we were going to do at the coming weekend.



7. I asked Captain Meadows if he had ever been married.
8. Michael told me (that) Mary was coming with the 5.20 train and asked me to do him a favour and meet her at the station.
9. The passenger said (that) they had not been given any further information about the course of the ship.
10. Mike was afraid (that) he would not be able to recognize her as he had never seen her.
11. She expected (that) she should be back about tea time, there was no one coming for dinner.
12. She said (that) Anne would be leaving school the next year.
13. She said (that) neither she nor her married sister had ever gone farther than Glasgow.
14. He said to Nancy in an apologetic manner that he had been looking for her.

**Ex. 192, p. 528**

1. After I was introduced to Captain Meadows, I asked him if he had ever been married.
2. Antonia stood smiling in the doorway. She knew that they had just been talking of her.
3. They did not go far when the girl suddenly cried: "Why, we are in a garden!" Without knowing how, they had entered a large garden.
4. Early that morning, when we had just left the house we met the man, that we had been looking for since Monday.
5. But still he was sitting there motionless. He was tired, he was so very tired. It seemed to him that he had been tired for a very long time.
6. I found that I was too late to catch the London train. Hailing the first taxi that was passing, I reached the station at ten minutes to three, only two minutes after the train had left it.
7. Sir George, who was talking in a loud voice, turned round sharply.

8. Mrs. Meadows told me that he talked about all the things that had happened to him in his long life.
9. It was four o'clock when she heard the sound she had been waiting for over an hour: the door at the bottom of the stairs creaked.
10. It was all so sudden that for a moment no one knew what had happened.
11. She was saying to herself all the way up from Oxford that she must have somebody to talk it over.
12. When I came to see him the next day I learnt that he had died in his sleep.
13. Tony did not know that the man they were talking about was Michael's friend.
14. The moon was rising now and the lake was fully visible.

**Ex. 193, p. 528**

1. The news, that he had left the town was a surprise to all of us.
2. Edward is a dear. I have always been very fond of him.
3. By the time you come we shall have done the greater part of the work.
4. He asked himself if he had seen her before.
5. By the end of the school year we shall / will have learnt a lot of new words.
6. When he counted the money he put it away.
7. I don't know anything about it. I have not seen him lately. He has been mostly in London all these days.
8. When by half past two he had not arrived Dora was worried.
9. They say that by the first of January they will have lived in this street for ten years.
10. When I have been in your country for five years, I shall / will write a book about it.
11. I shall / will stay until you have done your translation. I can help you if you allow me.
12. Those who have written the test may leave the classroom.

**Ex. 194, p. 529**

1. A cold wind with snow was blowing from the Alps; winter had come to the valley.
2. She said she had seen Lena lately. She had had a fashionable pink hat on.
3. We thought that by three o'clock we would have seen all the sights, but it began to rain and we had to come back to the hotel.
4. Nobody has been living in the house for some years already.
5. She has been playing the part of Juliet for three years already and she is always greeted with applause.
6. It was a fine Sunday morning in early summer. The sun was shining brightly, birds were singing. There was no wind.
7. Did the director receive you at once? — No, I had to wait till he got free.
8. Eliza thought that when she got home, father would have already come back from town and be waiting for her on the porch.
9. She said that she would not believe it until she saw everything with her own eyes.
10. I beg you to meet my sister. She is coming at 7 o'clock tomorrow. I hope, you will not be late.
11. Only in the metro, on my way to the theatre, I realized that I had left the opera glasses at home.
12. While I did the room he was amusing me with his numerous jokes.
13. The boy felt guilty as he had played / thrown snowballs for the whole day and had not done his lessons.
14. I stayed in the laboratory for two hours but could not fulfil the task.
15. We had already roamed about the forest for about two hours when at last we got out of it to the highway.

**Ex. 195, p. 529**

1. Some more milk was brought from the kitchen.

2. I hear a new cinema is being built not far from the park.
3. A new dress has been made for Ann.
4. You will be laughed at, Alice, if you say it again.
5. I was informed about their arrival by her letter.
6. The box has not been opened for two years.
7. Each student was spoken to separately.
8. The key was looked for everywhere but could not be found.
9. We must do all that can be done.
10. The girl is well spoken of.
11. The teacher asked if all the exercises on page five had been done.
12. Good progress must be worked for.
13. They were shown a lot of places of interest.
14. The city was crossed in different directions but the house could not be found anywhere.
15. Joan was greatly impressed by the play, so greatly that she cried.

**Ex. 196, p. 530**

1. When the doctor awoke, Miss Reid was still working.
2. Years have passed since we began this life.
3. I shall / will walk along the beach while you are bathing.
4. It is twelve o'clock now. So I have been working for five hours without rest.
5. We shall / will leave the minute you are ready.
6. By this time a small crowd had gathered and people asked each other what the matter was.
7. Of course I eat an apple every day — an apple a day keeps the doctor away.
8. Leaving a message that he would return the next day, he went home.
9. Why have you switched off the light? It is dark in the room.
10. Some urgent measures were taken while the doctor was being waited for.

11. I asked him if he had ever been to London.
12. Can this man be relied upon?
13. They walked for many hours before they came to the village.
14. We decided to wait till they returned.
15. Though I was ill for three weeks last month I hope I shall / will pass my exam successfully.
16. I am hurrying to the station. My friend is coming.
17. A new metro line has been lately built in this district.
18. Before I entered the Institute I had worked at the publishing house.
19. The secretary had typed all the documents by the time the dean came.
20. This work must be done very carefully.
21. This document has not been signed yet.
22. When I awoke there was nobody in. All had left.
23. He found the play much more interesting than he had expected it to be.
24. Here you are at last! We have been waiting for you for half an hour.
25. I was in a hurry as I knew that my mother was worrying.

**Ex. 197, p. 530**

1. I was late today as I had awoken only at nine o'clock.
2. We knew (that) if we asked him to help us he would agree.
3. I am not sure if he will follow your advice.
4. All this will be happening to me and very soon.
5. This noise has been going on since I sit here.
6. He opened the book and saw the photograph which he had not seen since he was a child.
7. I do not remember where I have put my glasses.
8. I felt (that) I was being looked at.
9. Last week he was ill and now he has recovered.
10. Why are you sitting on the stone? You may be taken ill.
11. The rain had stopped but a cold wind was blowing.

12. Have you been invited to the party? — Not yet, but I am sure I shall / will be.

**Ex. 198, p. 531**

1. Его сразу проводили в гостиную.
2. За это его могут заключить под стражу.
3. О вашем муже все хорошо думают, что очень важно.
4. Вы вполне были уверены, что ее там раньше никто не видел?
5. Есть два факта, которые надо объединить.
6. Почерк был идентифицирован как принадлежащий ей.
7. Бумаги сожгли, чтобы избавиться от улик.
8. Она обнаружила комнату точно в том же состоянии, в каком ее оставили предыдущим вечером.
9. Он все еще не уходил, хотя все, что он хотел сказать, было уже сказано.
10. Ее кровать была не тронута.
11. Его галстук был очень плохо повязан.
12. Когда же, наконец, отправят телеграмму?
13. Ее больше не видят с Джорджем.
14. Здесь не разрешается курить.
15. Посмотри, что нам прислали.

**Ex. 199, p. 531**

Once two merchants who were travelling in the desert by night lost one of their camels. The camel was loaded with corn, honey and a bag of gold.

An old man, who had spent all his life in the desert, noticed the merchants and said: "I see you have lost a camel."

"Yes, we have," they answered.

"Isn't he blind in his right eye, and lame in his left leg?"

"He is," answered the merchants.

"And isn't he loaded with money on one side and with corn on the other?"

"He certainly is!" exclaimed the merchants. "And as you have seen him so lately we hope you will show us where he is now."

"My friends," said the old man, "I have never seen your camel."

"But where is the bag of gold?" said the merchants and they took the man before the judge.

The old man with great calmness addressed the judge: "My life in the desert has taught me to notice things. So when I crossed the footprints of a camel I knew at once that he had run away from his owner, for I saw no other footprints in the sand. I knew that the animal was blind in one eye because he bit the grass only on one side of his path. I can tell from the footprints that he was lame. There were a great number of flies and some grains of wheat near the place where he lay down, so it was clear to me that his load consisted of corn and honey."

The judge let the old man go and said to the merchants: "This is the man who has helped you to find your camel."

**Ex. 200, p. 532**

1. The house is heated by gas.
2. A lot of old houses are being pulled down in this street.
3. Books from the library may be kept for a fortnight. After that they must be returned.
4. He has already been told about this tour.
5. He was expected to pass his exams well.
6. The runway in this airport has been lengthened.
7. The mushrooms will be thrown out if they are poisonous.
8. It cannot be done so quickly.
9. I had not been warned of the danger before the accident happened.
10. She will be taken to hospital tonight.
11. If you are laughed at, don't get offended.
12. Why weren't you at the party? — I had not been invited.

13. The girl was angry as she had not been allowed to go to the cinema.
14. This mountain has never been climbed.
15. Switch on the radio. A very good concert is being broadcast now.
16. She was seen with George last night.
17. When will he be sent for?
18. Have you been frightened (by anything)?
19. This fact must be paid attention to.
20. Why was he laughed at when he began speaking of his adventures?

**Ex. 201, p. 532**

1. This play has been staged in the Maly Theatre very well.
2. We are always received in this house very warmly.
3. I was greatly distressed by his attitude to me.
4. This performance is very difficult to get to if the tickets have not been taken beforehand.
5. When I was called on I was already ready.
6. He has just been introduced to me.
7. I was informed about it only today and I could not help her in any way.
8. She was always very glad when she was visited in hospital.
9. If you cross the street here you will be fined.
10. This sound must be pronounced with aspiration.
11. When the light was switched on she understood immediately that the papers had been stolen.
12. I suppose the translation will be finished in time.
13. He has been given all the necessary information on the question.
14. They have been advised to go to the south in spring.
15. I have never been asked about it.
16. This article is very interesting but it is seldom referred to.
17. He must be helped in a way.



18. It is not allowed to smoke here.
19. Why did you refuse when you were offered this work?
20. She was looked for everywhere but not found.
21. For how many days are you being sent on business tour?
22. A monument to partisans will be erected here.

**Ex. 202, p. 533**

1. How's Margaret? I have not seen her for a week or two. — Oh, she has been recovering very quickly.
2. I say, don't you think you must go? It will be soon getting late.
3. He got out of bed and went to the bathroom. After a minute or two he returned carrying a safety-razor blade.
4. Well, where have you been all the evening, James?
5. All he knew was that somewhere quite near him a band was playing.
6. The main street, when he reached it, had been almost deserted.
7. "If Glover does not want to make friends with me," he thought, "I'll try to avoid him."
8. My doctor gives me some awfully strong pills to take. They make me feel rather odd.
9. Mr. Pinfold has known him for thirty years. He is now the editor of a newspaper.
10. Margaret, darling, what are you doing here at this time of night?
11. Mr. Pinfold was walking the decks for an hour. No passengers were about.
12. Gilbert tells me you are landing tomorrow. How do you think to get to Cairo?
13. He stood alone thinking how quickly he had packed his things.
14. I think something was left for me here about an hour ago.
15. They parted four days later at the hotel in Colombo where they had met.

16. Goodbye, Ned. I'll never forget you. I'll be missing you more than anyone I have ever known in my life.
17. "Mrs. Pinfold arrived an hour ago," the concierge told him. "She has been waiting for you in your room."
18. I couldn't make any plans till I knew what sort of state I should / would find him in.
19. John invited me to dine with his friends. He said they would be delighted and added that he himself would be glad to have a companion.
20. Have you heard from Margaret yet?

# **Содержание**

Предисловие .....	3
-------------------	---

## **Коррективный курс**

Lesson Four .....	5
Lesson Five .....	6
Lesson Six .....	9
Lesson Seven .....	13
Lesson Eight .....	21
Lesson Nine .....	26
Lesson Ten .....	33
Lesson Eleven .....	40

## **Основной курс**

Lesson Twelve .....	47
Lesson Thirteen .....	60
Lesson Fourteen .....	70
Lesson Fifteen .....	81
Lesson Sixteen .....	89
Lesson Seventeen .....	101
Lesson Eighteen .....	114
Lesson Nineteen .....	120
Lesson Twenty .....	127

## **Grammar Exercises**

To Lessons 1-3 .....	139
To Lessons 4-5 .....	148
To Lessons 6-7 .....	153
To Lessons 8-9 .....	158
To Lessons 10 .....	161
To Lessons 11-12 .....	168
To Lessons 13-14 .....	179
To Lesson 15 .....	194
To Lesson 16 .....	201
To Lesson 17 .....	209

To Lesson 18 .....	213
To Lesson 19 .....	217
Revision Exercises on Tense and Voice .....	227

По вопросам оптовых закупок обращаться:  
тел./факс: (495) 785-15-30, e-mail: trade@airis.ru  
Адрес: Москва, пр. Мира, 104

Наш сайт: [www.airis.ru](http://www.airis.ru)

Вы можете приобрести наши книги  
с 11<sup>00</sup> до 17<sup>30</sup>, кроме субботы, воскресенья,  
в киоске по адресу: пр. Мира, д. 106, тел.: (495) 785-15-30

Адрес редакции: 129626, Москва, а/я 66

Издательство «АЙРИС-пресс» приглашает к сотрудничеству  
авторов образовательной и развивающей литературы.

По всем вопросам обращаться  
по тел.: (495) 785-15-33, e-mail: editor@airis.ru

*Учебное издание*

**Федуленкова Татьяна Николаевна**

**КЛЮЧИ К УЧЕБНИКУ  
«ПРАКТИЧЕСКИЙ КУРС АНГЛИЙСКОГО ЯЗЫКА 1 КУРС»  
под редакцией В. Д. Аракина**

Ведущий редактор *Н. А. Наумова*

Редактор *Е. Е. Зорькина*

Художественный редактор, оформление *А. М. Драговой*

Технический редактор *Т. В. Исаева*

Компьютерная верстка *Г. В. Доронина*

Корректоры *О. И. Терехина, З. А. Тихонова*

Подписано в печать 17.09.07. Формат 60×90/16.  
Гарнитура «Школьная». Печать офсетная. Печ. л. 16.  
Усл.-печ. л. 16. Тираж 5000 экз. Заказ № 3104.

ООО «Издательство «АЙРИС-пресс»  
113184, Москва, ул. Б. Полянка, д. 50, стр. 3.

ОАО «Тверской ордена Трудового Красного Знамени  
полиграфкомбинат детской литературы им. 50-летия СССР».  
170040, г. Тверь, пр. 50 лет Октября, 46.

